



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

EducT

918.31

294B

CANCELLED

Box No. 842

ESSEX INSTITUTE.

BEQUEATHED BY
DANIEL A. WHITE.

RECEIVED NOVEMBER, 1861.

LIBRARY CONDITIONS.

The Library to be under the control of the Directors, who may withhold such books from circulation as they may deem expedient.

Each member shall be permitted to take from the Library, one folio, or one quarto, or two of any lesser fold, with the plates belonging to the same, upon signing a receipt for the same, and promising to make good any damage which may be sustained when in their possession, or to replace the same, if lost.

No person shall lend any book belonging to the Institute, except to a member, under a penalty of one dollar for every offence.

The Directors may permit other persons than members to use the Library. No member shall detain any book longer than four weeks, after being duly notified that the same is wanted by another member, under a penalty of twenty-five cents per week.

On or before the first Wednesday in May, all books shall be returned, and a Committee of the Directors appointed for that purpose shall examine the Library, and make a report of the condition at the Annual Meeting.

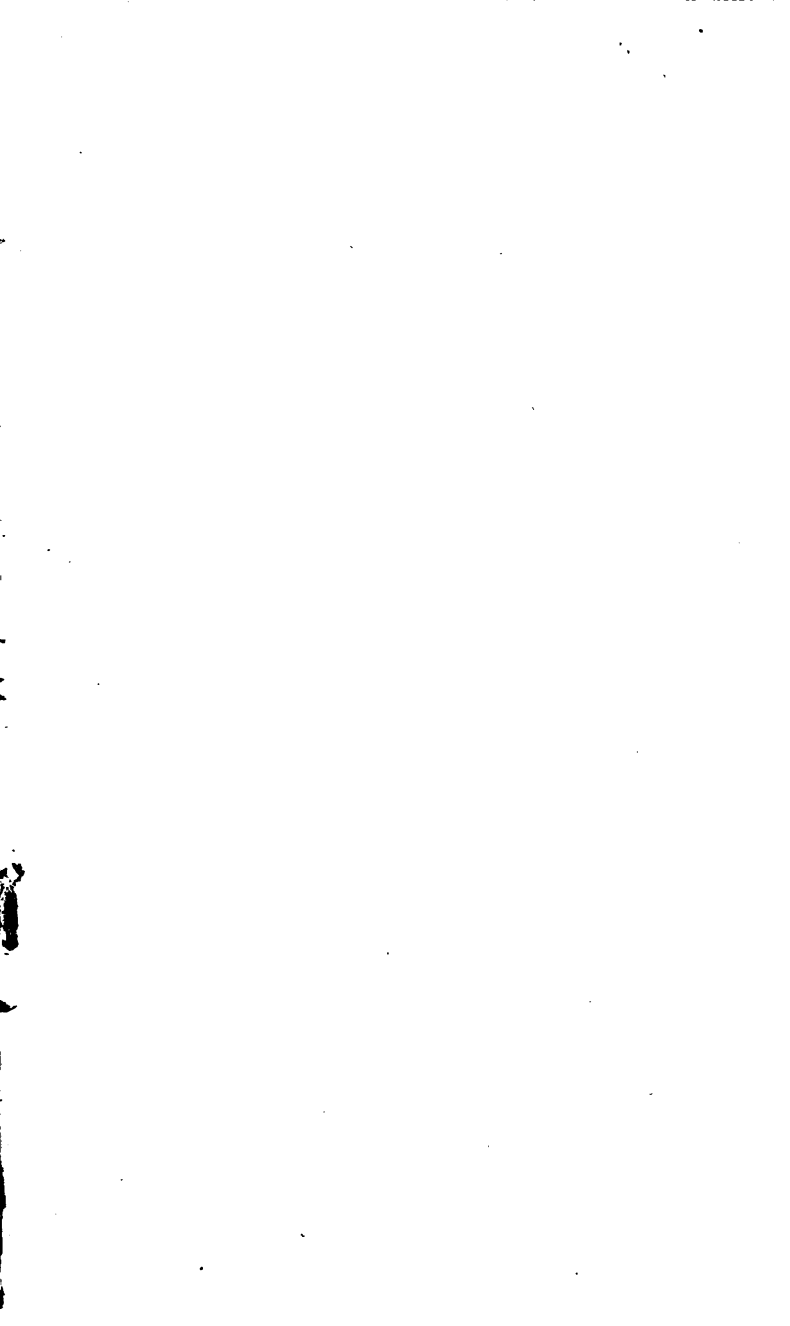
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

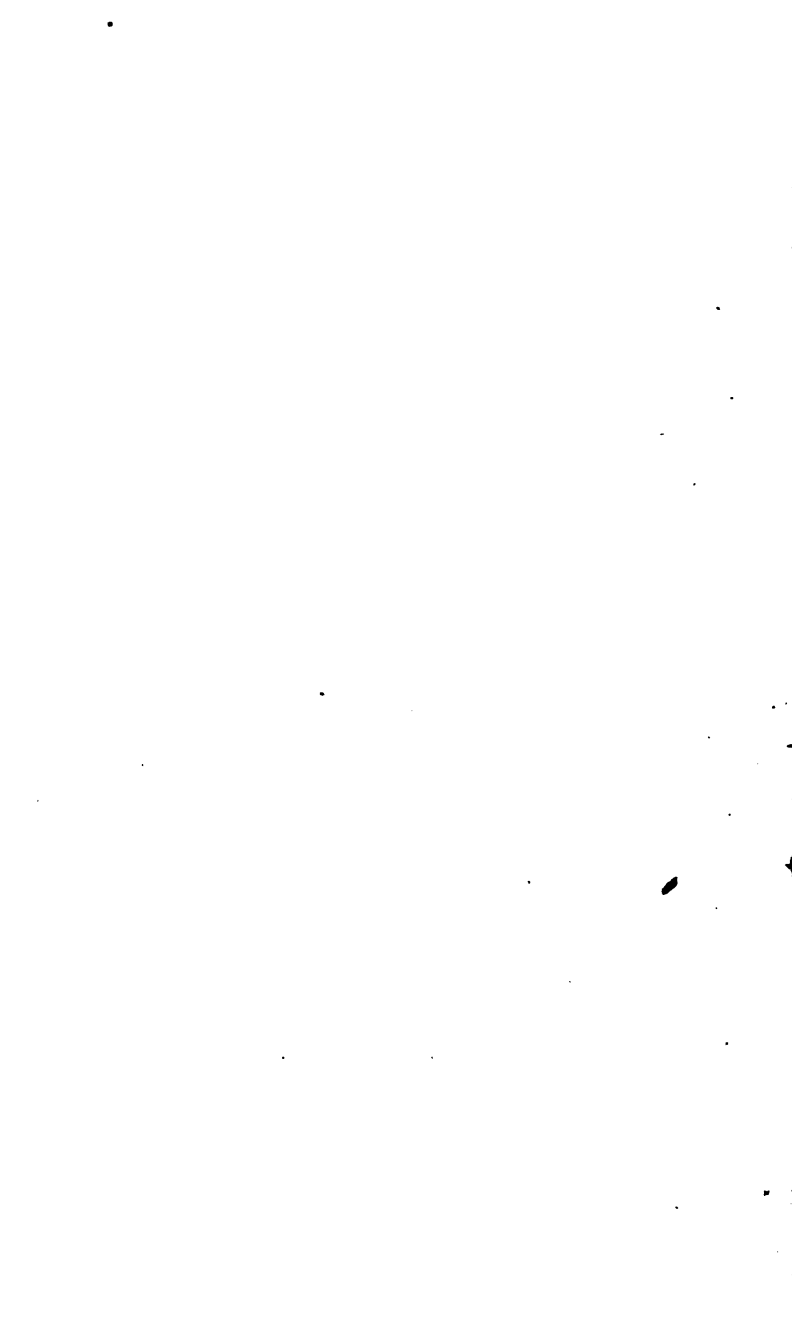
THE GIFT OF

GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON



3 2044 097 065 510





FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN;

Upon a New Plan;

COMBINING

ABSTRACT RULES,

WITH A

PROGRESSIVE SERIES OF PRACTICAL EXERCISES.

SECOND EDITION.

BY CHARLES DEXTER CLEVELAND, A.M.
Professor of Languages in Dickinson College.

BOSTON:

CARTER, HENDEE AND BABCOCK.

BALTIMORE: CHARLES CARTER.

1831.

Educ T 918.31.294 B

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
BRIDGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON
JANUARY 25, 1904

**ENTERED, according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1851,
by CARTER, HENDER and BABCOCK, in the Clerk's office of the
District Court of Massachusetts.**

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

FEELING the want of some simple, introductory work to the Latin language, for the younger class of learners, the author prepared the first edition of this little book for his own immediate use, while engaged in the instruction of youth. The public, however, having so far approved of the work as to call soon for a new edition, he has not failed to prepare it, and, by the introduction of many improvements, to render it still more worthy of approbation. He is aware that the present labour is a very humble one; a labour, from which neither profit nor fame can be expected; but, humble as it is, it will be richly repaid, if it shall facilitate the labours of the instructor, and lessen the difficulties of the youthful scholar in entering upon his classical studies.

Dickinson College, Carlisle, March 29, 1831.

ADVERTISEMENT.

IN consequence of the author's residing at a distance from the press, he could not conveniently superintend the reading of the proofs. He therefore entrusted it to his friend Mr. Oliver W. Treadwell, whose critical care is evinced by the few errors that have been detected. Instructors are requested to correct the copies which they may give to their pupils, in conformity with the following list of errata:

Page 65, line 1st from top, for *ejus* read *eorum*.

- | | | | | |
|------|---|---------------|---|---|
| 126, | " | 3d | " | for <i>miserēre</i> read <i>miserēri</i> . |
| 140, | " | 4th | " | for <i>Cannæ</i> read <i>Cannārum</i> . |
| 144, | " | 11th | " | for <i>Cethægus</i> read <i>Cethēgus</i> . |
| 145, | " | 8th | " | for <i>servitus</i> read <i>servitus</i> . |
| 148, | " | 6th | " | for <i>inflamārit</i> read <i>inflammāvit</i> . |
| 154, | " | 4th from bot. | | for <i>pisco</i> read <i>piscor</i> . |
| 156, | " | 12th | " | for <i>admōdum</i> read <i>admōdum</i> . |
| 167, | " | 9th from top, | | for <i>rhetōre</i> read <i>rhetōre</i> . |

FIRST

LESSONS IN LATIN.

ORIGIN OF THE LANGUAGE.

Question. By what people, and when was the Latin language spoken?

Answer. By the Romans, about eighteen hundred years ago.

Q. Who were the Romans?

A. They were the people who inhabited Rome, a city of Italy, in the southern part of Europe.

Q. Why is the Latin sometimes called a *dead language*?

A. Because it is not spoken by any nation now living, but was the language of a people, who, for many hundred years, have been extinct or dead.

PRONUNCIATION.

Q. How is the Latin language pronounced?

A. As it is not known how the Romans pronounced it, each of the modern nations of Europe follows the rules of its own language. The English, therefore, pronounce the Latin according to the principles of the English language,

Q. What do the curve mark $\smile$ and the horizontal line — over the vowels mean?

A. The curve mark $\smile$ over a vowel shows it to be short: the horizontal line — shows it to be long.

Q. How do these marks regulate the pronunciation?

A. In words of three syllables or more than three, if the last syllable but one, which is called *the penult*, be long, the accent is upon it, as *amābam*, where the accent is upon the *ā*: but if *the penult* have the short accent over it, the syllable before it, which is called the *antepenult*, is accented, as *hómīnis*, where the accent is on the first syllable.

Examples to be pronounced and explained by the scholar.

Sermōnis.

Amavērim.

Fuērunt.

Legebamīni.

Capitibus.

Pennārum.

LETTERS.

Q. How many letters are there in the Latin language?

A. Twenty-five, which are the same as those in the English, with the exception of W, which the Latins do not use.

Q. How many of these are vowels?

A. Six; *a, e, i, o, u, y*, each of which makes a distinct sound by itself. The other letters are called consonants, which do not make a perfect sound without the aid of a vowel.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

Q. How many sorts of words, or *Parts of Speech* are there in the Latin language?

A. Nine: the *Noun*, the *Adjective*, the *Pronoun*, the *Verb*, the *Participle*, the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Interjection*, and the *Conjunction*.

NOUN.

Q. What is a *Noun*?

A. A *Noun* is the name of any person, place, or thing. Thus, *boy* is a *Noun*, because it is the name of a person; *school* is a *Noun*, as it is the name of a place; and *book* is a *Noun*, as it is the name of a thing.

Q. Do nouns undergo any change?

A. They do, on account of their *genders*, their *numbers*, and their *cases*.

GENDER.

Q. What is *gender*?

A. *Gender* is the distinction of objects with regard to their sex.

Q. How many *genders* have nouns?

A. Properly speaking there are but two genders, the *masculine*, which is applied to names of men, or male beings, and the *feminine*, which is applied to names of women, or female beings. But those nouns which are neither *masculine* nor *feminine*, are called *neuter*; and those which are either masculine or feminine, according to the sense, are called *common*. Therefore there may be said to be four genders, the *masculine*, the *feminine*, the *neuter*, and the *common*.

NUMBER.

Q. What is *number*?

A. *Number* is the distinction of objects whether as one, or more than one.

Q. How many *numbers* has a noun?

A. Two: the *singular* number, which is used when a single thing is spoken of; and the *plural* number, which is used when two things, or more than two things are spoken of.

CASE.

Q. What are cases?

A. Cases are changes which are made upon the endings or termination of nouns.

Q. How many cases has a Latin noun?

A. Six: the *nominative* case, the *genitive* case, the *dative* case, the *accusative* case, the *vocative* case, and the *ablative* case.

Q. What general rules can you give about some particular cases in all nouns?

A. First. The *dative* and *ablative* plural of all nouns in all declensions are alike.

Second. All nouns of the neuter gender have the *accusative* and *vocative* like the *nominative*, in both numbers, and in the plural number, these three cases, the *nominative*, the *accusative*, and the *vocative* always end in *a*.

Third. In all nouns of all declensions and genders, the *nominative* and *vocative* plural are the same.

DECLENSION.

Q. What is declension?

A. The declension of a noun is the repetition of all its different cases.

Q. How many different ways are there of varying, or declining nouns?

A. Five: which are called the *first* declension, the *second* declension, the *third* declension, the *fourth* declension, and the *fifth* declension.

Q. How can you tell one declension from another?

A. By the ending of the *genitive* case, singular number. In the *first* declension the *genitive* singular ends in *æ*, in the *second* declension it ends in *i*, in the *third* declension it ends in *is*, in the *fourth* declension it ends in *us*, and in the *fifth* declension it ends in *ei*, as ¹*æ*, ²*i*, ³*is*, ⁴*us*, ⁵*ei*.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Q. In what does the nominative case of nouns of the first declension end?

A. Nouns of the *first* declension end in *a*, in the nominative.

Q. What is the gender of the nouns of this declension?

A. Feminine gender.

Q. How do you distinguish nouns of the First Declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *æ* diphthong.

Q. What is a diphthong?

A. The union of two vowels so as to make but one sound. The diphthong *æ* is pronounced like *e*.

Decline *Penna*, *a pen*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nominative,</i>	<i>penna,</i>	<i>a pen,</i>
<i>Genitive,</i>	<i>pennæ,</i>	<i>of a pen,</i>
<i>Dative,</i>	<i>pennæ,</i>	<i>to or for a pen,</i>
<i>Accusative,</i>	<i>pennam,</i>	<i>a pen,</i>
<i>Vocative,</i>	<i>penna,</i>	<i>O pen,</i>
<i>Ablative,</i>	<i>pennâ,</i>	<i>with, from, in, or by a pen.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nominative,</i>	<i>pennæ,</i>	<i>pens,</i>
<i>Genitive,</i>	<i>pennârum,</i>	<i>of pens,</i>
<i>Dative,</i>	<i>pennis,</i>	<i>to or for pens,</i>
<i>Accusative,</i>	<i>pennas,</i>	<i>pens,</i>
<i>Vocative,</i>	<i>pennæ,</i>	<i>O pens,</i>
<i>Ablative,</i>	<i>pennis,</i>	<i>with, from, in, or by pens.</i>

Q. In how many cases can you find *penna*? What cases are they, and what do they mean?

Q. In how many places can you make *pennæ*? What are they? What their meanings?

Q. In how many places can you make *pennis*? Where *pennam*? Where *pennarum*? Where *pennas*?

LATIN EXAMPLES FOR TRANSLATING.*

Aræ.	Horam.	Rosæ.	Terra.
Bestia.	Luna.	Sagittam.	Undas.
Cithararum.	Oris.	Scholis.	Viarum.
Epistolis.	Palpebras.	Speluncæ.	Victimis.
Umbrae.	Satyram.	Muscas.	Literis.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES TO BE RENDERED INTO LATIN.

a Girl.	in Chains.	of the Table.
O Victim.	of Plants.	with the Lyre.
by Poets.	Battles.	Life.
in the Sand.	to Envy.	by a Fable.
by Slander.	for Wings.	to Punishment.

*It is recommended, that when the scholar translates these nouns, he close his book, and that the instructor give out the word to him. He will then tell in what cases it can be found, and the meanings of it in the several cases respectively. In like manner the instructor will repeat the English nouns, for which the scholar will tell the Latin, with the number and case.

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Part 1st, Latin and English.

Ara, an altar.
 Bestia, a beast.
 Cithära, a harp.
 Epistōla, an epistle.
 Hora, an hour.
 Litēra, a letter.
 Luna, the moon.
 Musca, a fly.
 Ora, a coast.
 Palpēbra, the eyelid.
 Rosa, a rose.
 Sagitta, an arrow.
 Satyra, a satire.
 Schola, a school.
 Spelunca, a cave.
 Terra, the earth.
 Unda, a wave.
 Via, a way.
 Victima, a victim.
 Umbra, a shadow.

Part 2d, English and Latin.

a Battle, pugna.
 a Chain, catēna.
 Envy, invidia.
 a Fable, fabūla.
 a Girl, puella.
 Life, vita.
 a Lyre, lyra.
 a Plant, planta.
 a Poet, poēta.
 a Punishment, pena.
 Sand, arēna.
 Slander, calumniā.
 a Table, tabūla.
 a Victim, victima.
 a Wing, ala.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Q. How do you distinguish nouns of the Second Declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *i*.

Q. In what do the nominatives singular of all nouns of this declension end?

A. They end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, and *um*.

Q. Which of these are of the neuter gender?

A. Those which end in *um*.

Q. Of what gender are the rest?

A. The rest of the nouns, which end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, and *us* are of the masculine gender.

Decline *Gener, a son-in-law*, masculine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>gener,</i>	<i>a son-in-law,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>generi,</i>	<i>of a son-in-law,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>genero,</i>	<i>to or for a son-in-law,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>generum,</i>	<i>a son-in-law,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>gener,</i>	<i>O son-in-law,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>genero, with, from, in or by</i>	<i>a son-in-law.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>generi,</i>	<i>sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>generorum,</i>	<i>of sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>generis,</i>	<i>to or for sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>generos,</i>	<i>sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>generi,</i>	<i>O sons-in-law,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>generis, with, from, in or by</i>	<i>sons-in-law.</i>

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Soceri,
Furciferos,

Vir,
Presbyterorum,

Viris.

Decline *Ager*, a field, masculine gender.*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	ager,	a field,
<i>Gen.</i>	agri,	of a field,
<i>Dat.</i>	agro,	to or for a field,
<i>Acc.</i>	agrum,	a field,
<i>Voc.</i>	ager,	O field,
<i>Abl.</i>	agro,	with, from, in or by a field.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	agri,	fields,
<i>Gen.</i>	agrōrum,	of fields,
<i>Dat.</i>	agris,	to or for fields,
<i>Acc.</i>	agros,	fields,
<i>Voc.</i>	agri,	O fields,
<i>Abl.</i>	agris,	with, from, in or by fields.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Fabrōrum.	Colūbros.	Arbitris.
Magistri.	Ministro.	Aprum.
Alexandro.	Libri.	Auster.

Decline *Domīnus*, a lord, masculine gender.*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	domīnus,	a lord,
<i>Gen.</i>	domīni,	of a lord,
<i>Dat.</i>	domīno,	to or for a lord,
<i>Acc.</i>	domīnum,	a lord,
<i>Voc.</i>	domīne,	O lord,
<i>Abl.</i>	domīno,	with, from, in or by a lord.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	domīni,	lords,
<i>Gen.</i>	dominōrum,	of lords,
<i>Dat.</i>	domīnis,	to or for lords,
<i>Acc.</i>	domīnos,	lords,
<i>Voc.</i>	domīni,	O lords,
<i>Abl.</i>	domīnis,	with, from, in or by lords.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Agni.	Pontus.	Thesaurum.
Rivos.	Nimbos.	Ursōrum.
Ocūlis.	Fluvio.	Muris.
Popūlum.	Philosōphi.	Scopūle.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

Buffaloes.	for a Bushel.	a Hat.
in Sleep.	to a Rock.	from the Arm.
of a Slave.	O Messengers.	with the Oars.
O Master.	of an Oven.	in Autumn.

Decline Regnum, *a kingdom*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	regnum,	a kingdom,
<i>Gen.</i>	regni,	of a kingdom,
<i>Dat.</i>	regno,	to or for a kingdom,
<i>Acc.</i>	regnum,	a kingdom,
<i>Voc.</i>	regnum,	O kingdom,
<i>Abl.</i>	regno,	with, from, in or by a kingdom.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	regna,	kingdoms,
<i>Gen.</i>	regnōrum,	of kingdoms,
<i>Dat.</i>	regnis,	to or for kingdoms,
<i>Acc.</i>	regna,	kingdoms,
<i>Voc.</i>	regna,	O kingdoms,
<i>Abl.</i>	regnis,	with, from, in or by kingdoms.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Antro.	Imperia.	Vincūla.	Venēnum.
Delūbri.	Labiōrum.	Tecto.	Castra.
Scutum.	Templis.	Sigillum.	Bellōrum.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

for Judgment.	of Slavery.	in Wars.
with a Gift.	the Doors.	for Assistance.
in the Bosom.	O Destruction.	in Chains.
Vices.	of Dreams.	to the Town.

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Part 1st, Latin and English.

Agnus, *a lamb.*
 Alexander, *Alexander.*
 Antrum, *a cave.*
 Aper, *a wild boar.*
 Arbiter, *a judge.*
 Auster, *the south wind.*
 Bellum, *war.*
 Castrum, *a castle.*
 Coluber, *a snake.*
 Delubrum, *a temple.*
 Faber, *a workman.*
 Fluvius, *a river.*
 Furcifer, *a villain.*
 Imperium, *an empire.*
 Labium, *a lip.*
 Liber, *a book.*
 Magister, *a master.*
 Minister, *a servant.*
 Murus, *a wall.*
 Nimbus, *a cloud.*
 Oculus, *the eye.*
 Philosophus, *a philosopher.*
 Pontus, *the sea.*
 Populus, *the people.*
 Presbyter, *an elder.*
 Rivus, *a rivulet.*
 Scopulus, *a rock.*
 Scutum, *a shield.*
 Sigillum, *a seal.*
 Socer, *a father-in-law.*
 Tectum, *a roof.*
 Templum, *a temple.*
 Thesaurus, *a treasure.*
 Ursus, *a bear.*
 Venenum, *poison.*
 Vinculum, *a chain.*
 Vir, *a man.*

Part 2d, English and Latin.

the Arm, *lacertus.*
 Assistance, *auxilium.*
 Autumn, *autumnus.*
 the Bosom, *gremium.*
 a Buffalo, *urus.*
 a Bushel, *modius.*
 a Chain, *vinculum.*
 Destruction, *exitium.*
 a Door, *ostium.*
 a Dream, *somnium.*
 a Gift, *donum.*
 a Hat, *pileus.*
 Judgment, *judicium.*
 a Master, *herus.*
 a Messenger, *nuntius.*
 an Oar, *remus.*
 an Oven, *furnus.*
 a Rock, *scopulus.*
 a Slave, *servus.*
 Slavery, *servitium.*
 Sleep, *somnus.*
 a Town, *oppidum.*
 Vice, *vitium.*
 War, *bellum.*

THIRD DECLENSION.

Q. How do you distinguish nouns of the Third Declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *is*.

NOUNS ENDING IN O.

Decline *Sermo*, a speech, masculine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Sermo</i> ,	<i>a speech,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Sermōnis</i> ,	<i>of a speech,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Sermōni</i> ,	<i>to or for a speech,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Sermōnem</i> ,	<i>a speech,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Sermo</i> ,	<i>O speech,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Sermōne</i> ,	<i>from, in, by or with a speech.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Sermōnes</i> ,	<i>speeches,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Sermōnum</i> ,	<i>of speeches,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Sermonibus</i> ,	<i>to or for speeches,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Sermōnes</i> ,	<i>speeches,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Sermōnes</i> ,	<i>O speeches,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Sermonibus</i> ,	<i>from, in, by or with speeches.</i>

Q. How is the genitive of *Sermo* formed?

A. By adding *nis* to the nominative.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Latrōnes.</i>	<i>Statiōni.</i>	<i>Rebelliōnes.</i>
<i>Bubo.</i>	<i>Conciōnum.</i>	<i>Dictionibus.</i>
<i>Regiōne.</i>	<i>Pavōnem.</i>	<i>Lectiōne.</i>
<i>Opinionibus.</i>	<i>Seditiōnis.</i>	<i>Religiōni.</i>

Decline *Arundo*, a reed, feminine gender.*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Arundo,	a reed,
<i>Gen.</i>	Arundinis,	of a reed,
<i>Dat.</i>	Arundīni,	to or for a reed,
<i>Acc.</i>	Arundīnem,	a reed,
<i>Voc.</i>	Arundo,	O reed,
<i>Abl.</i>	Arundīne,	from, by or with a reed.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Arundīnes,	reeds,
<i>Gen.</i>	Arundīnum,	of reeds,
<i>Dat.</i>	Arundīnibus,	to or for reeds,
<i>Acc.</i>	Arundīnes,	reeds,
<i>Voc.</i>	Arundīnes,	O reeds,
<i>Abl.</i>	Arundīnibus,	from, by or with reeds.

Q. How is the genitive of *Arundo* formed?

A. By changing *o* into *inis*.

Swallows.	for Health.	*on Hinges.
in Darkness.	of Virgins.	of a Spade.
with Fear.	Hail.	O Virgin.

NOUNS ENDING IN *a*.

Q. Of what gender are all nouns ending in *a*, of the third declension?

A. Of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. By adding *tis* to the nominative; as *dogma*, genitive *dogmātis*.

* The English preposition *on* is rendered by the ablative.

Decline Dogma, *an opinion*, neuter gender.*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Dogma,	<i>an opinion,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Dogmātis,	<i>of an opinion,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Dogmāti,	<i>to or for an opinion,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Dogma,	<i>an opinion,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Dogma,	<i>O opinion,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Dogmāte,	<i>with, from or by an opinion.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Dogmāta,	<i>opinions,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Dogmātum,	<i>of opinions,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Dogmatibus,	<i>to or for opinions,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Dogmāta,	<i>opinions,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Dogmāta,	<i>O opinions,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Dogmatibus,	<i>with, from or by opinions</i>

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Poematibus.	Poemāti.	Schemāta.
Diplōma.	Numismātis.	Strategematibus.
Schemāte.	Ænigmātum.	

NOUNS WHICH END IN E.

Q. Of what gender is this class of nouns?

A. Nouns which end in *e* are of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. By changing *e* into *is*, as *Nom. sedīle*, *Gen. sedīlis*.

Decline Sedile, *a seat*, neuter gender.*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Sedile,	<i>a seat,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Sedilis,	<i>of a seat,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Sedili,	<i>to or for a seat,</i>

<i>Acc.</i>	Sedīle,	<i>a seat,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Sedīle,	<i>O seat,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Sedīli,	<i>with, from or by a seat.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Sedilia,	<i>seats,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Sedilium,	<i>of seats,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Sedilībus,	<i>to or for seats,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Sedilia,	<i>seats,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Sedilia,	<i>O seats,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Sedilībus,	<i>with, from or by seats.</i>

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

O Shield.	with Towels.	Stables.
in a Couch.	of a Room.	in the Sheep-fold.

NOUNS ENDING IN *MEN*:

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *men*?

A. Of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. By changing *en* into *inis*, as *flumen*, *flumīnis*.

Decline *Flumen*, *a river*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Flumen,	<i>a river,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Flumīnis,	<i>of a river,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Flumīni,	<i>to or for a river,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Flumen,	<i>a river,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Flumen,	<i>O river,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Flumīne,	<i>with, from or by a river.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Flumīna,	<i>rivers,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Flumīnum,	<i>of rivers,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Fluminībus,	<i>to or for rivers,</i>

<i>Acc.</i>	Flumīna,	rivers,
<i>Voc.</i>	Flumīna,	O rivers,
<i>Abl.</i>	Fluminibus,	with, from or by rivers.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Foraminibus.	Lumīni.	Lumīne.
Crimen.	Agmīna.	Ominibus.
Cacuminis.	Nomīnum.	Carmīnis.

NOUNS ENDING IN *ER* AND *OR*.

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *er* and *or*?

A. Generally masculine, though some are of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. By adding *is* to the nominative, as *dolor, dolōris*.

Decline *Dolor, pain*, masculine gender.*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Dolor,	pain,
<i>Gen.</i>	Dolōris,	of pain,
<i>Dat.</i>	Dolōri,	to or for pain,
<i>Acc.</i>	Dolōrem,	pain,
<i>Voc.</i>	Dolor,	O pain,
<i>Abl.</i>	Dolōre,	with, from or by pain.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Dolōres,	pains,
<i>Gen.</i>	Dolōrum,	of pains,
<i>Dat.</i>	Doloribus,	to or for pains,
<i>Acc.</i>	Dolōres,	pains,
<i>Voc.</i>	Dolōres,	O pains,
<i>Abl.</i>	Doloribus,	with, from or by pains.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Rumōres.	Debitoribus.	Pastoribus.
Pudor.	Sopore.	Aggeris.
Pastoris.	Rumorum.	Splendore.
Lectorem.	Honori.	Colori.

NOUNS ENDING IN *as*.

Q. Of what gender are these nouns?

A. Feminine gender.

Q. How do they form their genitive?

A. By changing *s* into *tis*; as *ætas*, *ætātis*, *an age*.

Decline *Ætas*, *an age*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ætas</i> ,	<i>an age</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ætātis</i> ,	<i>of an age</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Ætāti</i> ,	<i>to or for an age</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Ætātem</i> ,	<i>an age</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Ætas</i> ,	<i>O age</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Ætāte</i> ,	<i>with, in or by an age</i> .

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ætātes</i> ,	<i>ages</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ætātūm</i> ,	<i>of ages</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Ætatibus</i> ,	<i>to or for ages</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Ætātes</i> ,	<i>ages</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Ætātes</i> ,	<i>O ages</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Ætatibus</i> ,	<i>with, in or by ages</i> .

Q. How do nouns ending in *as* and *ns* form the genitive plural?

A. They form it regularly in *ium*; as *ætātes*, *ætatiūm*: *parentes*, *parentiūm*. But generally the *i* is omitted, as *parentes*, *parentūm*: *ætātes*, *ætātūm*.

Q. What does the circumflex mark ^ over the *u* mean?

A. That the two syllables *iut* are contracted into one syllable, *um*.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

in the Summer.	for Power.	of the Will.
with Pleasures.	of Truth.	of Pleasures.

NOUNS ENDING IN *ES*.

Q. How do these nouns form the genitive?

A. Commonly by changing *es* into *is*, as *rupes*, *rupis*: but there are very many nouns ending in *es*, that form the genitive differently.

Decline *Rupes*, *a rock*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Rupes,</i>	<i>a rock,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Rupis,</i>	<i>of a rock,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Rupi,</i>	<i>to or for a rock,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Rupem,</i>	<i>a rock,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Rupes,</i>	<i>O rock,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Rupe,</i>	<i>by or on a rock.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Rupes,</i>	<i>rocks,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Rupium,</i>	<i>of rocks,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Rupibus,</i>	<i>to or for rocks,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Rupes,</i>	<i>rocks,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Rupes,</i>	<i>O rocks,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Rupibus,</i>	<i>by or on rocks.</i>

LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Clade.</i>	<i>Nubium.</i>	<i>Famis.</i>
<i>Struibus.</i>	<i>Vulpes.</i>	<i>Palumbem.</i>
<i>Sudi.</i>		

Q. How do some other nouns ending in *es* form the genitive?

A. By changing *es* into *itis*, as *ales*, *a bird*, gen. *alitis*, *of a bird*; *miles*, *a soldier*; gen. *militis*, *of a soldier*.

NOUNS ENDING IN *IS*.

Q. What is the genitive of nouns in *is*?

A. The same as the nominative.

Q. How are they declined?

A. Like *rupes*, which has been declined before.

Decline *Vitis*, *a vine*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Vitis</i> ,	<i>a vine</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Vitis</i> ,	<i>of a vine</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Viti</i> ,	<i>to or for a vine</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Vitem</i> ,	<i>a vine</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Vitis</i> ,	<i>O vine</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Vite</i> ,	<i>with, from or by a vine</i> .

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Vites</i> ,	<i>vines</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Vitium</i> ,	<i>of vines</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Vitibus</i> ,	<i>to or for vines</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Vites</i> ,	<i>vines</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Vites</i> ,	<i>O vines</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Vitibus</i> ,	<i>with, from, in or by vines</i> .

LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Apium.</i>	<i>Colli.</i>	<i>Vallis.</i>
<i>Classibus.</i>	<i>Ense.</i>	<i>Unguem.</i>
<i>Mense.</i>	<i>Vestium.</i>	

NOUNS ENDING IN *US*.

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *us*?

A. They are generally of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. They form it variously. Some change *us* into *ōris*, as *corpus*, *a body*; Gen. *corpōris*, *of a body*. Others change *us* into *ēris*, as, *munus*, *a gift*; Gen. *munēris*, *of a gift*. And others change *s* into *dis* or *tis*; as *pecus*, *a sheep*; Gen. *pecūdis*, *of a sheep*; *servitus*, *slavery*; Gen. *servitūtis*, *of slavery*.

Decline *Opus*, *a work*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Opus</i> ,	<i>a work</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Opēris</i> ,	<i>of a work</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Opēri</i> ,	<i>to or for a work</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Opus</i> ,	<i>a work</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Opus</i> ,	<i>O work</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Opēre</i> ,	<i>with, from or by a work</i> .

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Opēra</i> ,	<i>works</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Opērum</i> ,	<i>of works</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Operībus</i> ,	<i>to or for works</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Opēra</i> ,	<i>works</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Opēra</i> ,	<i>O works</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Operībus</i> ,	<i>with, from or by works</i> .

LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Munēre.</i>	<i>Sidēri.</i>	<i>Onērum.</i>
<i>Sidus.</i>	<i>Vulnerībus.</i>	<i>Scelēra.</i>
<i>Funēris.</i>	<i>Pondēre.</i>	

NOUNS ENDING IN *NS*, *RS*, *PS*, AND *BS*.

Q. How is the genitive of these nouns formed?

A. By changing *s* into *is* or *tis*; as *trabs*, *a beam*; Gen. *trabis*, *of a beam*; *pars*, *a part*; Gen. *partis*, *of a part*.

Decline *Parens*, a parent, common gender.*Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Parens</i> ,	a parent,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Parentis</i> ,	of a parent,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Parenti</i> ,	to or for a parent,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Parentem</i> ,	a parent,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Parens</i> ,	O parent,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Parente</i> ,	with, from or by a parent.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Parentes</i> ,	parents,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Parentum</i> ,	of parents,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Parentibus</i> ,	to or for parents,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Parentes</i> ,	parents,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Parentes</i> ,	O parents,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Parentibus</i> ,	with, from or by parents.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Dente.</i>	<i>Fontibus.</i>	<i>Pontis.</i>
<i>Sepem.</i>	<i>Rudentis.</i>	<i>Fons.</i>
<i>Montium.</i>	<i>Serpenti.</i>	

NOUNS ENDING IN T.

Q. Is this a large class of nouns?

A. There is but one *simple* noun in T in the Latin language, which is of the neuter gender.

Decline it.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Caput</i> ,	a head,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Capitis</i> ,	of a head,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Capiti</i> ,	to or for a head,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Caput</i> ,	a head,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Caput</i> ,	O head,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Capite</i> ,	with, from or by a head.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Capīta,	heads,
<i>Gen.</i>	Capītum,	of heads,
<i>Dat.</i>	Capitibus,	to or for heads,
<i>Acc.</i>	Capīta,	heads,
<i>Voc.</i>	Capīta,	O heads,
<i>Abl.</i>	Capitibus,	with, from or by heads.

NOUNS ENDING IN X.

Q. How is the genitive of these nouns formed?

A. By changing *x* into *cis*, as *lux*, *light*; *Gen.* *lucis*, of *light*.

Decline *Vox*, *the voice*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Vox,	the voice,
<i>Gen.</i>	Vocis,	of the voice,
<i>Dat.</i>	Voci,	to or for the voice,
<i>Acc.</i>	Vocem,	the voice,
<i>Voc.</i>	Vox,	O voice,
<i>Abl.</i>	Voce,	with, from or by the voice.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Voces,	voices,
<i>Gen.</i>	Vocum,	of voices,
<i>Dat.</i>	Vocibus,	to or for voices,
<i>Acc.</i>	Voces,	voices,
<i>Voc.</i>	Voces,	O voices,
<i>Abl.</i>	Vocibus,	with, from or by voices.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

<i>Pacis.</i>	<i>Salīci.</i>	<i>Mercem.</i>
<i>Cervicem.</i>	<i>Face.</i>	<i>Nuces.</i>
<i>Radicibus.</i>	<i>Cornīcum.</i>	<i>Radīce.</i>

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

*Part 1st, Latin and English.**Enigma*, neut. *a riddle.**Agger*, masc. *a rampart.**Agmen*, neut. *an army.**Apis*, fem. *a bee.**Bubo*, masc. *an owl.**Cacūmen*, neut. *the top.**Carmen*, neut. *a song.**Cervix*, fem. *the neck.**Clades*, fem. *a defeat.**Classis*, fem. *a fleet.**Collis*, masc. *a hill.**Color*, masc. *a colour.**Concio*, fem. *an assembly.**Cornix*, fem. *a crow.**Crimen*, neut. *a crime.**Debitor*, masc. *a debtor.**Dens*, masc. *a tooth.**Dictio*, fem. *a word.**Diplōma*, neut. *a charter.**Ensis*, masc. *a sword.**Fames*, fem. *hunger.**Fax*, fem. *a torch.**Fons*, masc. *a well.**Forāmen*, neut. *a hole.**Funus*, neut. *a funeral.**Honor*, masc. *honor.**Latro*, masc. *a robber.**Lectio*, fem. *a lesson.**Lector*, masc. *a reader.**Lumen*, neut. *light.**Mensis*, masc. *a month.**Merx*, fem. *merchandise.**Mons*, masc. *a mountain.**Munus*, neut. *a gift.**Nomen*, neut. *a name.**Nubes*, fem. *a cloud.**Numisma*, neut. *a coin.**Nux*, fem. *a nut.**Omen*, neut. *an omen.**Onus*, neut. *a burden.**Opinio*, fem. *an opinion.**Palumbes*, com. *a pigeon.**Pastor*, masc. *a shepherd.**Pavo*, masc. *a peacock.**Pax*, fem. *peace.**Poēma*, neut. *a poem.**Pondus*, neut. *a weight.**Pons*, masc. *a bridge.**Pudor*, masc. *shame.**Radix*, fem. *a root.**Rebello*, fem. *a rebellion.**Regio*, fem. *a country.**Religio*, fem. *religion.**Rudens*, com. *a cable.**Rumor*, masc. *a report.**Salix*, fem. *a willow.**Scelus*, neut. *a crime.**Schema*, neut. *a scheme.**Seditio*, fem. *a mutiny.**Seps*, fem. *a hedge.**Serpens*, com. *a serpent.**Sidus*, neut. *a star.**Sopor*, masc. *sleep.**Splendor*, masc. *brightness.**Statio*, fem. *a station.**Strategēma*, neut. *an artifice.**Strues*, fem. *a heap.**Sudes*, fem. *a stake.**Unguis*, masc. *a nail.**Vallis*, fem. *a valley.**Vestis*, fem. *a garment.**Vulnus*, neut. *a wound.**Vulpes*, fem. *a fox.*

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Part 2d, English and Latin.

a Couch, *cubīle*, neut.
 Darkness, *caligo*, fem.
 Fear, *formīdo*, fem.
 Hail, *grando*, fem.
 Health, *valetūdo*, fem.
 a Hinge, *cardo*, masc.
 Pleasure, *voluptas*, fem.
 Power, *potestas*, fem.
 a Room, *conclāve*, neut.
 a Sheep-fold, *ovīle*, neut.

a Shield, *ancīle*, neut.
 a Spade, *ligo*, masc.
 a Stable, *equīle*, neut.
 Summer, *æstas*, fem.
 a Swallow, *hirundo*, fem.
 a Towel, *mantīle*, neut.
 Truth, *veritas*, fem.
 a Virgin, *virgo*, fem.
 Will, *voluntas*, fem.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Q. In what syllables do the nominatives of nouns of the fourth declension end?

A. In *us* and *u*.

Q. How can you tell a noun of the *fourth* declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *us*.

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *us*?

A. Masculine gender.

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *u*?

A. Of the neuter gender, and in the singular number they are not declined.

Q. What do you mean when you say they are not declined?

A. That all the six cases are the same.

Decline *Fructus*, *fruit*, masculine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Fructus</i> ,	<i>fruit</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Fructûs</i> ,	<i>of fruit</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Fructui</i> ,	<i>to or for fruit</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Fructum</i> ,	<i>fruit</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Fructus</i> ,	<i>O fruit</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Fructu</i> ,	<i>with, from or by fruit</i> .

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Fructus</i> ,	<i>fruits</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Fructuum</i> ,	<i>of fruits</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Fructûbus</i> ,	<i>to or for fruits</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Fructus</i> ,	<i>fruits</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Fructus</i> ,	<i>O fruits</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Fructûbus</i> ,	<i>with, from or by fruits</i> .

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Risu.	Venātu.	Gemītus.
Ictibus.	Sumptum.	Eventu.
Fluctui.	Motuum.	Exercītus.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

in a Chariot.	Expenses.	for Gain.
to a Nod.	in Assemblies.	with Groans.
of a Complaint.	Singing.	with Success.

Decline Cornu, *a horn*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Cornu,	<i>a horn,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Cornu,	<i>of a horn,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Cornu,	<i>to or for a horn,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Cornu,	<i>a horn,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Cornu,	<i>O horn,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Cornu,	<i>with, by or in a horn.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Cornua,	<i>horns,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Cornuum,	<i>of horns,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Cornūbus,	<i>to or for horns,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Cornua,	<i>horns,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Cornua,	<i>O horns,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Cornūbus,	<i>with, by or in horns.</i>

Decline Domus, *a house*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Domus,	<i>a house,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Domūs or domi,	<i>of a house,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Domui or domo,	<i>to or for a house,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Domum,	<i>a house,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Domus,	<i>O house,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Domo,	<i>with, from, in or by a house.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Domus,	<i>houses,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Domōrum, or domuum,	<i>of houses,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Domībus,	<i>to or for houses,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Domos or domus,	<i>houses,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Domus,	<i>O houses,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Domībus,	<i>with, from, in or by houses.</i>

Q. What is there peculiar to Domus?

A. It is both of the *second* and *fourth* declensions; that is, it is declined like nouns of each of these declensions.

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

Part 1st, Latin and English.

Eventus, masc. *an event.*
 Exercitus, masc. *an army.*
 Fluctus, masc. *a wave.*
 Gemitus, masc. *a groan.*
 Ictus, masc. *a stroke.*
 Motus, masc. *a motion.*
 Risus, masc. *laughter.*
 Sumptus, masc. *expense.*
 Venātus, masc. *hunting.*

Part 2d, English and Latin.

an Assembly, *cætus*, masc.
 a Chariot, *currus*, masc.
 a Complaint, *questus*, masc.
 Expense, *sumptus*, masc.
 Gain, *questus*, masc.
 a Groan, *gemitus*, masc.
 a Nod, *nutus*, masc.
 Singing, *cantus*, masc.
 Success, *succensus*, masc.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Q. In what do the nominatives of nouns of the fifth declension end?

A. They end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender.

Q. How do you distinguish a noun of this declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *ei*.

Decline *Res*, a *thing*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Res</i> ,	a <i>thing</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Rēi</i> ,	of a <i>thing</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Rēi</i> ,	to or for a <i>thing</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Rem</i> ,	a <i>thing</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Res</i> ,	O <i>thing</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Re</i> ,	from, with or by a <i>thing</i> .

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Res</i> ,	<i>things</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Rērum</i> ,	of <i>things</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Rēbus</i> ,	to or for <i>things</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Res</i> ,	<i>things</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Res</i> ,	O <i>things</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Rēbus</i> ,	with, from or by <i>things</i> .

Q. In how many places can you make *res*? and what places are they? In how many *rēi*? in how many *rēbus*?

ADJECTIVES.

Q. What is an adjective?

A. An adjective is a word which is always joined to some noun, to define or describe it; as a *good* boy, a *wise* man, a *swift* horse. Here the words *good*, *wise* and *swift* are adjectives, because they give the character of the nouns to which they are joined.

Q. How many sorts of adjectives are there?

A. There are two sorts; those of the first and second declension, and those of the third declension.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Q. How are adjectives of the first and second declension declined, or varied?

A. The masculine is declined like a masculine noun of the *second* declension, as *dominus*; the feminine is declined like a feminine noun of the *first* declension, as *penna*; and the neuter is declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, as *regnum*.

Decline Bonus, which means *good*.

Singular number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Bonus,	bona,	bonum,
<i>Gen.</i>	Boni,	bonæ,	boni,
<i>Dat.</i>	Bono,	bonæ,	bono,
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonum,	bonam,	bonum,
<i>Voc.</i>	Bone,	bona,	bonum,
<i>Abl.</i>	Bono,	bonâ,	bono.

Plural number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Boni,	bonæ,	bona,
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonorum,	bonarum,	bonorum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonis,	bonis,	bonis,
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonos,	bonas,	bona,
<i>Voc.</i>	Boni,	bonæ,	bona,
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonis,	bonis,	bonis.

Q. Why are the endings of adjectives changed in this manner?

A. In order to agree with the nouns to which they are joined, in gender, number and case.

Q. Vary or decline the *masculine* gender of *bonus*, in all the cases, and join *vir*, *a man*, to it; which also is of the masculine gender.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Bonus vir,	<i>a good man,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Boni viri,	<i>of a good man,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bono viro,	<i>to, or for a good man,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonum virum,	<i>a good man,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Bone vir,	<i>O good man,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bono viro,	<i>with a good man.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Boni viri,	<i>good men,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonōrum virōrum,	<i>of good men,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonis viris,	<i>to, or for good men,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonos viros,	<i>good men,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Boni viri,	<i>O good men,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonis viris,	<i>with good men.</i>

Q. Now vary the *feminine* of *bonus*, in all its cases, to agree with *penna*, which is *feminine*.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Bonna penna,	<i>a good pen,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonæ pennæ,	<i>of a good pen,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonæ pennæ,	<i>to or for a good pen,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonam pennam,	<i>a good pen,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Bona penna,	<i>O good pen,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonâ pennâ,	<i>with a good pen.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Bonæ pennæ,	<i>good pens,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonārum pennārum,	<i>of good pens,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonis pennis,	<i>to or for good pens,</i>

<i>Acc.</i>	Bonas pennas,	<i>good pens,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Bonæ pennæ,	<i>O good pens,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonis pennis,	<i>with good pens.</i>

Q. Now decline the *neuter* gender of *bonus*, in all its cases, to agree with *negotium*, which also is *neuter*.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Bonum negotium,	<i>a good thing,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Boni negotii,	<i>of a good thing,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bono negotio,	<i>to or for a good thing,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bonum negotium,	<i>a good thing,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Bonum negotium,	<i>O good thing.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bono negotio,	<i>with a good thing.</i>

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Bona negotia,	<i>good things,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bonōrum negotiōrum,	<i>of good things,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bonis negotiis,	<i>to or for good things,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bona negotia,	<i>good things,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Bona negotia,	<i>O good things,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bonis negotiis,	<i>with good things.</i>

[*Let rule 2d now be committed to memory by the pupil.**]

Examples of adjectives of the first and second declension agreeing with their substantives. [The vocabulary is at the end of the pronouns.]

Carus amīcus.	Propria nomīna.
Formōsa filia.	Divinārum legum.
Pretiōsum aurum.	Superbos pavōnes.
Fidī servi.	Ultimam spem.
Bellæ foemīnæ.	Caros amīcos.
Pretiōso auro.	Fidis servis.
Alexandrum magnum.	

* The pupil cannot fail now to understand the rule, which in common systems of grammar so much puzzles him, "an adjective agrees with its substantive in gender, number and case."

Q. What other adjectives are there of the first and second declension?

A. Some of the first and second declension end in *er*.

Decline *Tener*, *tender*, which belongs to this class.

Singular number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Tener,	teněra,	teněrum,
<i>Gen.</i>	Teněri,*	teněraě,	teněri,
<i>Dat.</i>	Teněro,	teněraě,	teněro,
<i>Acc.</i>	Teněrum,	teněraě,	teněrum,
<i>Voc.</i>	Tener,	teněra,	teněrum,
<i>Abl.</i>	Teněro,	teněraě,	teněro.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Teněri,	teněraě,	teněra,
<i>Gen.</i>	Tenerōrum,	tenerārum,	tenerōrum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Teněris,	teněris,	teněris,
<i>Acc.</i>	Teněros,	teněras,	teněra,
<i>Voc.</i>	Teněri,	teněraě,	teněra,
<i>Abl.</i>	Teněris,	teněris,	teněris.

Examples of adjectives declined in the same manner.

Aspěri lapīdis.

Miserōrum homīnum.

Prospěri mercatōres.

Aspěro lapīde.

*The following adjectives of the first and second declension, ending in *us* and *er*, have *ius* in the genitive, and *i* in the dative, and the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

<i>Nom.</i>	Unus,	una,	unum;	<i>Gen.</i>	unīus;	<i>Dat.</i>	uni,	one.
	Alius,	alia,	alium;		aliūs;		alii,	another.
	Nullus,	nulla,	nullum;		nullīus;		nulli,	none.
	Solus,	sola,	solum;		soliūs;		soli,	alone.
	Totus,	tota,	totum;		totīus;		toti,	all.
	Ullus,	ulla,	ullum;		ulliūs;		ulli,	any.
	Alter,	altěra,	altěrum;		alterīus;		altěri,	the other.
	Uter,	utra,	utrum;		utriūs;		utri,	either.

Q. Are all adjectives which end in *er* declined like *tener*?

A. They are not; very many drop the *e*: as *glaber*, *smooth*.

Nom. *glaber*, *glabra*, *glabrum*, and not
glaber, *glabĕra*, *glabĕrum*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Q. How are adjectives of the *third* declension declined?

A. The masculine is declined like a masculine noun of the third declension; the feminine is declined in the same manner; and the neuter is declined like a neuter noun of the third declension.

Decline *Felix*, *happy*.

Singular number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Felix</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Felīcis</i> ,	<i>felīcis</i> ,	<i>felīcis</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Felīci</i> ,	<i>felīci</i> ,	<i>felīci</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Felīcem</i> ,	<i>felīcem</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Felix</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,	<i>felix</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Felice</i> , or } <i>Felīci</i> , }	<i>felīce</i> or } <i>felīci</i> , }	<i>felīce</i> or } <i>felīci</i> . }

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Felīces</i> ,	<i>felīces</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Felīcium</i> ,	<i>felīcium</i> ,	<i>felīcium</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Felīcibus</i> ,	<i>felīcibus</i> ,	<i>felīcibus</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Felīces</i> ,	<i>felīces</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Felīces</i> ,	<i>felīces</i> ,	<i>felicia</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Felīcibus</i> ,	<i>felīcibus</i> ,	<i>felīcibus</i> .

Decline Pauper, *poor*.*Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Pauper,	pauper,	pauper,
<i>Gen.</i>	Paupĕris,	paupĕriſ,	paupĕris,
<i>Dat.</i>	Paupĕri,	paupĕri,	paupĕri,
<i>Acc.</i>	Paupĕrem,	paupĕrem,	pauper,
<i>Voc.</i>	Pauper,	pauper,	pauper,
<i>Abl.</i>	Paupĕre,	paupĕre,	paupĕre.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Paupĕres,	paupĕres,	paupĕra,
<i>Gen.</i>	Paupĕrum,	paupĕrum,	paupĕrum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Pauperĭbus,	pauperĭbus,	pauperĭbus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Paupĕres,	paupĕres,	paupĕra,
<i>Voc.</i>	Paupĕres,	paupĕres,	paupĕra,
<i>Abl.</i>	Pauperĭbus,	pauperĭbus,	pauperĭbus.

Decline Prudens, *prudent*.*Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Prudens,	prudens,	prudens,
<i>Gen.</i>	Prudentis,	prudentis,	prudentis,
<i>Dat.</i>	Prudenti,	prudenti,	prudenti,
<i>Acc.</i>	Prudentem,	prudentem,	prudens,
<i>Voc.</i>	Prudens,	prudens,	prudens,
<i>Abl.</i>	Prudente or Prudenti,	} <i>in all the genders.</i>	

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Prudentes,	prudentes,	prudentia,
<i>Gen.</i>	Prudentium,	prudentium,	prudentium,
<i>Dat.</i>	Prudentĭbus,	prudentĭbus,	prudentĭbus,

<i>Acc.</i>	Prudentes,	prudentes,	prudentia,
<i>Voc.</i>	Prudentes,	prudentes,	prudentia,
<i>Abl.</i>	Prudentibus,	prudentibus,	prudentibus.

Decline *Mitis*, meek.*Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Mitis,	mitis,	mite,
<i>Gen.</i>	Mitis,	mitis,	mitis,
<i>Dat.</i>	Miti,	miti,	miti,
<i>Acc.</i>	Mitem,	mitem,	mite,
<i>Voc.</i>	Mitis,	mitis,	mite,
<i>Abl.</i>	Miti,	miti,	miti.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Mites,	mites,	mitia,
<i>Gen.</i>	Mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
<i>Dat.</i>	Mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Mites,	mites,	mitia,
<i>Voc.</i>	Mites,	mites,	mitia,
<i>Abl.</i>	Mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

In the same manner are declined the following adjectives.

Terribile tonitru.

Comi puero.

Sublimes arborea.

Gravium lapidum.

Lævem aquam.

Viridi herbâ.

Omnibus hominibus.

Terrestria animalia.

Decline Duo, *two*.*Plural number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Duo,	duæ,	duo,
<i>Gen.</i>	Duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Duos or duo,	duas,	duo,
<i>Voc.</i>	Duo,	duæ,	duo,
<i>Abl.</i>	Duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.

Decline Tres, *three*.*Plural number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	Tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>Gen.</i>	Trium,	trium,	trium,
<i>Dat.</i>	Tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>Voc.</i>	Tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>Abl.</i>	Tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

DEGREES.

Q. How are the different degrees of any quality expressed in Latin?

A. By changes made on the terminations of the adjectives.

Q. What are these changes called?

A. They are called *Degrees of Comparison*.

Q. How many *Degrees of Comparison* are there?

A. There are three; the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

POSITIVE DEGREE.

Q. What is the *positive degree*?

A. The *positive degree* is that which does not express any *increase* or *decrease* in the quality: as, *durus, hard; latus, broad.*

COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

Q. What is the *comparative degree*?

A. The *comparative degree* is that which expresses some *increase* or *decrease* in the quality: as *durior, harder; latior, broader; minor, less.*

SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

Q. What is the *superlative degree*?

A. The *superlative degree* is that which expresses the greatest *increase* or *decrease* in the quality: as, *durissimus, hardest; latissimus, broadest; minimus, least.*

FORMATION OF THE DEGREES.

Q. How are the degrees formed?

A. The *comparative degree* is formed from the first case of the positive which ends in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine genders, and *us*, for the neuter gender: as

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>altus,</i>	<i>alta,</i>	<i>altum,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>alti.</i>		

Here the genitive is the first case that ends in *i*; then add *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us*, for the neuter: as

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>altior,</i>	<i>altior,</i>	<i>altius.</i>

Q. Is the genitive always the first case of the positive that ends in *i*?

A. It is not; sometimes the dative; as, *Nom. Mitis; Gen. Mitis; Dat. Miti;* now add *or* and *us*, which will make *mitior, mitior, mitius.*

Decline *Mitior*, meeker.*Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Mitior,	mitior,	mitius,
<i>Gen.</i>	Mitiōris,	mitiōris,	mitiōris,
<i>Dat.</i>	Mitiōri,	mitiōri,	mitiōri,
<i>Acc.</i>	Mitiōrem,	mitiōrem,	mitius,
<i>Voc.</i>	Mitior,	mitior,	mitius,
<i>Abl.</i>	Mitiōre or Mitiōri,	} in all the genders.	

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
<i>Gen.</i>	Mitiōrum,	mitiōrum,	mitiōrum,
<i>Dat.</i>	Mitioribus,	mitioribus,	mitioribus,
<i>Acc.</i>	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
<i>Voc.</i>	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
<i>Abl.</i>	Mitioribus,	mitioribus,	mitioribus.

Q. How are all adjectives of the *comparative degree* declined?

A. Like *mitior*, which has just been declined.

Q. How is the *superlative degree* formed?

A. The *superlative degree* is also formed from the first case of the positive which ends in *i*, by adding to it *ssimus*: as,

<i>Nom.</i>	Altus,	alta,	altum,
<i>Gen.</i>	Alti.		

now add *ssimus*, which makes *altissimus*, highest.

Q. Is there any great exception to this general rule?

A. There is; in all adjectives which end in *er*, the superlative degree is formed from the nominative, by adding *rimus*; as *pauper*, poor; *pauperrimus*, poorest.

Q. How are all adjectives of the superlative degree declined?

A. Like *Bonus*.

EXAMPLES OF REGULAR COMPARISON.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<i>Acūtus,</i> <i>sharp,</i>	<i>acutior,</i> <i>sharper,</i>	<i>acutissīmus,</i> <i>sharpest.</i>
<i>Antīquus,</i> <i>ancient,</i>	<i>antiquior,</i> <i>more ancient,</i>	<i>antiquissīmus,</i> <i>most ancient.</i>
<i>Durus,</i> <i>hard,</i>	<i>durior,</i> <i>harder,</i>	<i>durissīmus,</i> <i>hardest.</i>
<i>Longus,</i> <i>long,</i>	<i>longior,</i> <i>longer,</i>	<i>longissīmus,</i> <i>longest.</i>
<i>Asper,</i> <i>rough,</i>	<i>asperior,</i> <i>rougher,</i>	<i>asperissīmus,</i> <i>roughest.</i>
<i>Glaber,</i> <i>smooth,</i>	<i>glabrior,</i> <i>smoother,</i>	<i>glaberrīmus,</i> <i>smoothest.</i>
<i>Pulcher,</i> <i>fair,</i>	<i>pulchrior,</i> <i>fairer,</i>	<i>pulcherissīmus,</i> <i>fairest.</i>

EXAMPLES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

<i>Bonus,</i> <i>good,</i>	<i>melior,</i> <i>better,</i>	<i>optimus,</i> <i>best.</i>
<i>Malus,</i> <i>bad,</i>	<i>pejor,</i> <i>worse,</i>	<i>pessimus,</i> <i>worst.</i>
<i>Magnus,</i> <i>great,</i>	<i>major,</i> <i>greater,</i>	<i>maximus,</i> <i>greatest.</i>
<i>Parvus,</i> <i>small,</i>	<i>minor,</i> <i>less,</i>	<i>minimus,</i> <i>least.</i>
<i>Multus, (masc.)</i> <i>much,</i>	—————	<i>plurimus,</i> <i>most.</i>
<i>Multa, (fem.)</i> <i>much,</i>	—————	<i>plurima,</i> <i>most.</i>
<i>Multum, (neut.)</i>	<i>plus,</i> <i>more,</i>	<i>plurimum,</i> <i>most,</i>

Dives, rich,	ditior, richer,	ditiasimus, richest.
Sup̄erus, high,	superior, higher,	{ supr̄emus or summus, highest.

PRONOUN.

Q. What is a pronoun?

A. A pronoun is a word which stands *for a noun*.

Q. Why does it receive this name?

A. Because it is made up of the Latin word *pro*, which means *for*, and *noun*; as if it were called a *for-noun*.

Q. Will you give me an example?

A. Cicero was the greatest orator of Rome: by *his* vigilance and patriotism *he* saved *his* country from ruin.

Q. Which are the pronouns in this sentence?

A. *He*, and *his*, which stand for the noun *Cicero*.

Q. How many simple pronouns in Latin are there?

A. Eighteen: three substantive pronouns, and fifteen adjective pronouns.

Q. What are the substantive pronouns?

A. *Ego*, *tu* and *suī*.

Q. Which are the adjective pronouns?

A. *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *quī*, *meus*, *tuus*, *suius*, *noster*, *vester*, *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujus*.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS

Decline *Ego*, *I*.

Singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego</i> ,	<i>I</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mei</i> ,	<i>of me</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i> ,	<i>to or for me</i> ,

<i>Acc.</i>	me,	me,
<i>Voc.</i>	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	me,	from, by or with me.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	nos,	we,
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrum or nostri,	of us,
<i>Dat.</i>	nobis,	to or for us,
<i>Acc.</i>	nos,	us,
<i>Voc.</i>	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	nobis,	from, by or with us.

*Decline Tu, thou.**Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	tu,	thou or you,
<i>Gen.</i>	tui,	of thee or of you,
<i>Dat.</i>	tibi,	to thee or to you,
<i>Acc.</i>	te,	thee or you,
<i>Voc.</i>	tu,	O thou or O you,
<i>Abl.</i>	te,	from, by or with thee or with you.

Plural number.

<i>Nom.</i>	vos,	ye or you,
<i>Gen.</i>	vestrum or vestri,	of you,
<i>Dat.</i>	vobis,	to or for you,
<i>Acc.</i>	vos,	you,
<i>Voc.</i>	vos,	O ye or you,
<i>Abl.</i>	vobis,	from, by or with you.

*Decline Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.**Singular number.*

<i>Nom.</i>	—	
<i>Gen.</i>	sui,	of himself, of herself, of itself,
<i>Dat.</i>	sibi,	to himself, to herself, to itself,

<i>Acc.</i>	<i>se,</i>	<i>himself, herself, itself,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>se,</i>	<i>with himself, with herself, with itself.</i>
		<i>Plural number.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	—	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>sui,</i>	<i>of themselves,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sibi,</i>	<i>to or for themselves,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>se,</i>	<i>themselves,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>se,</i>	<i>from, by or with themselves.</i>

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

Decline *Ille, he.**Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ille,</i> <i>he,</i>	<i>illa,</i> <i>she,</i>	<i>illud,</i> <i>it.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illius,</i>	<i>illius,</i>	<i>illius,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illi,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum,</i>	<i>illam,</i>	<i>illud,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ille,</i>	<i>illa,</i>	<i>illud,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illo,</i>	<i>illa,</i>	<i>illo.</i>

Plural number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illæ,</i>	<i>illa,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illorum,</i>	<i>illarum,</i>	<i>illorum,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illos,</i>	<i>illas,</i>	<i>illa,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illæ,</i>	<i>illa,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis.</i>

Decline *Hic, this.**Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	hic,	hæc,	hoc,
<i>Gen.</i>	hujus,	hujus,	hujus,
<i>Dat.</i>	huic,	huic,	huic,
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc,	hanc,	hoc,
<i>Voc.</i>	hic,	hæc,	hoc,
<i>Abl.</i>	hoc,	hac,	hoc.

Plural number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
<i>Gen.</i>	horum,	harum,	horum,
<i>Dat.</i>	his,	his,	his,
<i>Acc.</i>	hos,	has,	hæc,
<i>Voc.</i>	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
<i>Abl.</i>	his,	his,	his.

Q. What do the different genders of *hic* mean?

A. The masculine, *hic*, means *this man*; the feminine, *hæc*, means *this woman*; the neuter, *hoc*, means *this thing*.

Decline *Is, ea, id, he, she, it.**Singular number.*

	<i>Masculine,</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	is, he,	ea, she,	id, it.
<i>Gen.</i>	ejus, of him or his,	ejus, of her or hers,	ejus, of it or its.
<i>Dat.</i>	ei, to him,	ei, to her,	ei, to it.
<i>Acc.</i>	eum, him,	eam, her,	id, it.

<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	eo, with him,	eā, with her,	eo, with it.

Plural number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ii, they, or those men,	eæ, they, or those women,	ea, those things.
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum, of those men, or their,*	eārum, of those wo- men, or their,	eōrum, of those things.
<i>Dat.</i>	eis or iis, to those men,	eis or iis, to those wo- men,	eis or iis, to those things.
<i>Acc.</i>	eos, them, or those men,	eas, them, or those women,	ea, those things.
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	eis or iis, with those men,	eis or iis, with those women,	eis or iis, with those things. }

Q. Decline the adjective pronoun *quis*; first telling its meaning?

A. *Quis* means *who?* or *what man?* *quæ* means *who?* or *what woman?* *quod* or *quid* means *what?* *which thing?* or *what thing?*

Singular number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quis,	quæ,	quod, or } quid, }
<i>Gen.</i>	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,
<i>Dat.</i>	cui,	cui,	cui,

* As, eōrum libri, *their books*, or *the books of those men*: eārum libri, *their books*, or *the books of those women*.

<i>Acc.</i>	quem,	quam,	quod, or } quid, }
-------------	-------	-------	-----------------------

Voc. — — —

<i>Abl.</i>	quo,	quâ,	quo.
-------------	------	------	------

Plural number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
<i>Gen.</i>	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>queis, or } quibus, }</i> <i>in all the genders.</i>		

<i>Acc.</i>	quos,	quas,	quæ,
-------------	-------	-------	------

Voc. — — —

<i>Abl.</i>	<i>queis, or } quibus, }</i> <i>in all the genders.</i>		
-------------	---	--	--

Q. What is the *relative pronoun*?

A. Qui, quæ, quod.

Q. What is the meaning of it?

A. *Who, which, that;* or *vir qui, the man who or that;* *fœmina quæ, the woman who or that;* *negotium quod, the thing which or that.*

Q. How is it declined?

Singular number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	qui,	quæ,	quod,
<i>Gen.</i>	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,
<i>Dat.</i>	cui,	cui,	cui,
<i>Acc.</i>	quem,	quam,	quod,
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	quo,	quâ,	quo.

Plural number.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
<i>Gen.</i>	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,

<i>Dat.</i>	queis, or quibus,	} in all the genders.		
<i>Acc.</i>	quos,	quas,	quæ,	
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____	_____	
<i>Abl.</i>	queis, or quibus,	} in all the genders.		

Q. What other pronouns are there?

A. *Meus*, which means my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own; all which are declined like *bonus, bona, bonum*. There are also two, *noster*, our; and *vester*, your; declined like *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum*.

VOCABULARY.

Alexander, Alexandri; proper noun, 2d declen. masc. *Alexander, the name of the great Macedonian general.*

Amicus, amīci; noun, 2d declen. masc. *a friend.*

Animāl, animālis; noun, 3d declen. neut. *an animal.*

Aqua, aquæ; noun, 1st declen. fem. *water.*

Arbor, arbōris; noun, 3d declen. fem. *a tree.*

Asper, aspēra, aspērum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *rough.*

Aurum, auri; noun, 2d declen. neut. *gold.*

Bellus, bella, bellum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *handsome.*

Carus, cara, carum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *dear, beloved.*

Comis, comis, come; adjec. 3d declen. *mild.*

Divinus, divīna, divīnum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *divine.*

Fidus, fīda, fīdum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *faithful.*

Filia, filiæ; noun, 1st declen. fem. *a daughter.*

Fœmīna, fœmīnæ; noun, 1st declen. fem. *a woman.*

Formōsus, formōsa, formōsum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *beautiful.*

Gravis, gravis, grave; adjec. 3d declen. *heavy.*

Herba, herbæ; noun, 1st declen. fem. *grass.*

Homo, hominis; noun, 3d declen. common gen. *a man, one of the human race*; sometimes applied to woman, and therefore of the common gender, because common to both man and woman.

Lævis, lævis, læve; adjec. 3d declen. *smooth*.

Lapis, lapidis; noun, 3d declen. masc. *a stone*.

Lex, legis; noun, 3d declen. fem. *law*.

Magnus, magna, magnum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *great*.

Mercātor, mercatōris; noun, 3d declen. masc. *a merchant*.

Miser, misēra, misērū; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *miserable*.

Nomen, nominis; noun, 3d declen. neut. *a name*.

Omnis, omnis, omne; adjec. 3d declen. *all*.

Pavo, pavōnis; noun, 3d declen. masc. and fem. *a peacock*.

Pretiōsus, pretiōsa, pretiōsum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *precious*.

Proprius, propria, proprium; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *proper*.

Prosper, prospēra, prospērū; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *prosperous*.

Puer, puēri; noun, 2d declen. masc. *a boy*.

Servus, servī; noun, 2d declen. masc. *a servant*.

Spes, spei; noun, 5th declen. fem. *hope*.

Sublimis, sublimis, sublime; adjec. 3d declen. *lofty, high*.

Superbus, superba, superbum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *proud*.

Terribilis, terribilis, terribile; adjec. 3d declen. *terrible*.

Terrestris, terrestres, terrestre; adjec. 3d declen. *terrestrial, earthly*.

Tonitru; noun, 4th declen. *thunder*; not declined in the singular number; nom. plural, *tonitrua*.

Ultimus, ultīma, ultimum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. superlative degree; *farthest, last*: it is not used in the positive: the comparative degree is *ulterior, farther*.

Viridis, viridis, viride; adjec. 3d declen. *green*.

OF THE VERB.

Q. What is a Verb?

A. A verb is that word in a sentence which declares some person or thing either as *being*, as *acting*, or as *being acted upon*.

Q. Will you give me some examples to explain what you mean?

A. When I say *I am*, I speak of my *being*, or my existence; when I say *I strike*, I speak of my *acting*, for I must strike something; when I say *I am struck*, I speak of my *being acted upon*, as some person must strike me.

Q. Why is it called a *verb*?

A. It is called a *verb*, (from the Latin *verbum*, which means a *word*,) because it is the chief word in every sentence; and without it no perfect sentence can exist.

Q. How many kinds of verbs are there?

A. Three: Active, Passive, and Neuter.

ACTIVE VERB.

Q. What is an active verb?

A. An active verb is that which expresses *action*; as *amo*, I love: and it always has an object; for the question would be asked, whom do you love? and the answer to the question is the object. As, I love *you*, I love *virtue*. In these examples *you* and *virtue* are called the *objects* of the verb.

PASSIVE VERB.

Q. What is a passive verb?

A. A passive verb is that which expresses the receiving of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved; which means that I receive the love of another person.

NEUTER VERB.

Q. What is a neuter verb?

A. A neuter verb is that which expresses neither action exerted upon an object, nor the receiving of an action, but only the *being* or *state of things*; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo* I sit; *curro*, I run.

Q. Is there not *action* expressed in the verb *curro*, I run?

A. There is; but then the action is confined to the person, and does not pass over to an object; which makes the distinction between an *active* and *neuter* verb.

Q. What is the meaning of the word *neuter*?

A. *Neuter* is the Latin word for *neither*. For example, a *neuter* verb or a *neither* verb is that which is *neither* active nor passive: so a *neuter* noun, or a *neither* noun, is one that is *neither* of the masculine nor feminine gender.

Q. Do verbs undergo any change?

A. They do; on account of voice, mode, tense, number, and person.

VOICE.

Q. How many voices are there?

A. There are *two* voices; the *active* voice, and the *passive* voice.

Q. How do you distinguish the two voices from one another?

A. The *active* voice ends in *o*; as *amo*, I love; the *passive* voice ends in *or*; as *amor*, I am loved.

MODE.

Q. How many modes are there?

A. There are *four* modes; the *indicative*; the *subjunctive*; the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

Q. What does the *indicative* mode declare?

A. The *indicative* mode *indicates* or declares a thing positively; as, *ego amo*, I love, or I do love: or it asks a question; as *amas tu?* dost thou love?

Q. What does the *subjunctive* mode signify?

A. The *subjunctive* mode signifies *power* or *duty*; as, *amem*, I may love; *amavissem*, I should have loved.

Q. What is the use of the *imperative* mode?

A. The *imperative* mode *commands* or *entreats*; as, *veni huc*, come hither; *ama tu*, love thou; *parce mihi*, spare me.

Q. How is the *infinitive* mode used?

A. The *infinitive* mode has neither number nor person, but expresses the signification of the verb without limit; as, *amāre*, to love; *docēre*, to teach; *legere*, to read; *audire*, to hear.

TENSE.

Q. How many tenses or times are there?

A. Five: the present, the imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, and the future.

Q. What does the *present* tense signify?

A. The *present* tense speaketh of a thing *present*, or now doing; as, *amo*, I love, or am loving.

Q. What does the *imperfect* tense express?

A. The *imperfect* tense expresses an action as passing some time ago, but not yet finished; as, *amābam*, I was loving; *ædificābat*, he was building.

Q. What does the *perfect* tense express?

A. The *perfect* tense expresses an action as perfectly completed and finished; as, *amāvit*, he loved, or has loved; *docui*, I taught.

Q. What does the *pluperfect* tense express?

A. The *pluperfect* tense expresses an action as finished before some other action took place; as, *ædificavēram*, I had

built; that is, I had built before a certain time; *amavĕrat*, he had loved.

Q. What does the *future* tense express?

A. The *future* tense speaks of a thing that will be done in future, or some time hence; as, *amābo*, I shall love; *cænābo*, I shall sup.

NUMBER.

Q. How many numbers are there?

A. Two: the *singular* number, which speaks of *one*: the *plural* number, which speaks of *two*, or more than two.

PERSON.

Q. How many persons are there?

A. Three: the first, second, and third.

Q. How do you distinguish the persons?

A. The pronouns, *Ego*, I; and *Nos*, we, are of the *first* person: *Tu*, thou; and *Vos*, you, are of the second person: *Ille*, he, and *all other words*, excepting the names of *persons spoken to*, are of the third person.

CONJUGATION.

Q. What do you mean by the conjugation of a verb?

A. The conjugation of a verb is the regular variation and distribution of its several parts, according to its *voices*, *modes*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*.

Q. How many conjugations of Latin verbs are there?

A. Four.

Q. How do you distinguish one conjugation from the other?

A. By the termination or ending of the infinitive mode.

In the first conjugation the infinitive ends in *āre*, long; as, *amāre*, to love; *gubernāre*, to govern.

In the second conjugation the infinitive ends in *ĕre*, long; as, *docĕre*, to teach; *exhibĕre*, to show.

In the third conjugation the infinitive ends in *ĕre*, short; as, *legĕre*, to read; *regĕre*, to govern.

In the fourth conjugation the infinitive ends in *ĭre*, long; as, *audĭre*, to hear; *venĭre*, to come.

Q. Do all verbs belong to one or the other of these conjugations?

A. They do not: a few verbs are irregular, and cannot be classed with verbs of any conjugation; such as the verb *sum*, I am.

Q. Conjugate the irregular verb *Sum*?

Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative,
Sum. *esse.* *fui.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego sum,	<i>I am,</i>
	Second person,	Tu es,	<i>Thou art, or you are,</i>
	Third person,	Ille est,	<i>He is;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos sumus,	<i>We are,</i>
	Second person,	Vos estis,	<i>Ye or you are,</i>
	Third person,	Illi sunt,	<i>They are.</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego eram,	<i>I was,</i>
	Second person,	Tu eras,	<i>Thou wast or you were,</i>
	Third person,	Ille erat,	<i>He was;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos erāmus,	<i>We were,</i>
	Second person,	Vos erātis,	<i>Ye or you were,</i>
	Third person,	Illi erant,	<i>They were.</i>

PERFECT TENSE. *have been or was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego fui,	<i>I have been,</i>
	Second person,	Tu fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been,</i>
	Third person,	Ille fuit,	<i>He has been;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos fuīmus,	<i>We have been,</i>
	Second person,	Vos fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been,</i>
	Third person,	Illi fuērunt, or fuere,	<i>They have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE. *had been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego fuēram,	<i>I had been,</i>
	Second person,	Tu fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been,</i>
	Third person,	Ille fuērat,	<i>He had been;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos fuerāmus,	<i>We had been,</i>
	Second person,	Vos fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been,</i>
	Third person,	Illi fuērant,	<i>They had been.</i>

FUTURE TENSE. *shall or will.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego ero,	<i>I shall be,</i>
	Second person,	Tu eris,	<i>Thou wilt be,</i>
	Third person,	Ille erit,	<i>He will be;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos erīmus,	<i>We shall be,</i>
	Second person,	Vos erītis,	<i>Ye or you will be,</i>
	Third person,	Illi erunt,	<i>They will be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego sim,	<i>I may be,</i>
	Second person,	Tu sis,	<i>Thou mayest be,</i>
	Third person,	Ille sit,	<i>He may be;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos simus,	<i>We may be,</i>
	Second person,	Vos sitis,	<i>Ye may be,</i>
	Third person,	Illi sint,	<i>They may be.</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE. *might, could, would or should.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego essem,	<i>I might be,</i>
	Second person,	Tu esses,	<i>Thou mightest be,</i>
	Third person,	Ille esset,	<i>He might be;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos essēmus,	<i>We might be,</i>
	Second person,	Vos essētis,	<i>Ye might be,</i>
	Third person,	Illi essent,	<i>They might be.</i>

PERFECT TENSE. *may have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego fuërim,	<i>I may have been,</i>
	Second person,	Tu fuëris,	<i>Thou mayest have been,</i>
	Third person,	Ille fuërit,	<i>He may have been;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos fuerimus,	<i>We may have been,</i>
	Second person,	Vos fueritis,	<i>Ye may have been,</i>
	Third person,	Illi fuërint,	<i>They may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE. *might, could, would or should have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego fuissem,	<i>I might have been,</i>
	Second person,	Tu fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been,</i>
	Third person,	Ille fuisset,	<i>He might have been;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been,</i>
	Second person,	Vos fuissētis,	<i>Ye might have been,</i>
	Third person,	Illi fuissent,	<i>They might have been.</i>

FUTURE TENSE. *shall have or will have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	First person,	Ego fuëro,	<i>I shall have been,</i>
	Second person,	Tu fuëris,	<i>Thou wilt have been,</i>
	Third person,	Ille fuërit,	<i>He will have been;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	First person,	Nos fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been,</i>
	Second person,	Vos fueritis,	<i>Ye will have been,</i>
	Third person,	Illi fuërint,	<i>They will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Second person,	Es Tu or esto Tu,	<i>Be thou or do thou be,</i>
	Third person,	Esto Ille,	<i>Let him be;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Second person,	Este Vos or estôte Vos,	<i>Be ye or be you,</i>
	Third person,	Sunto Illi,	<i>Let them be.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present tense,</i>	Esse,	<i>To be.</i>
<i>Perfect tense,</i>	Fuisse,	<i>To have been.</i>
<i>Future tense,</i>	Esse futūrus,	<i>To be about to be.</i>
	Fuisse futūrus,	<i>To have been about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Future,</i>	Futūrus, futūra, futūrum,	<i>About to be.</i>
----------------	---------------------------	---------------------

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Q. How is *amo*, I love, of the first conjugation, conjugated?

ACTIVE VOICE.

	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>Amo.</i>	<i>amāre.</i>	<i>amāvi.</i>	<i>amātum.</i>

Q. How is *amo* declined through all the Modes, Tenses and Numbers?

A. INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *love, do love, or am loving.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Am-o,</i>	<i>I love,</i>
	<i>Am-as,</i>	<i>Thou lovest,</i>
	<i>Am-at,</i>	<i>He loves;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Am-āmus,</i>	<i>We love,</i>
	<i>Am-ātis,</i>	<i>Ye or you love,</i>
	<i>Am-ant,</i>	<i>They love.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Am-ābam,</i>	<i>I was loving,</i>
	<i>Am-ābas,</i>	<i>Thou wast loving,</i>
	<i>Am-ābat,</i>	<i>He was loving;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Am-abāmus,</i>	<i>We were loving,</i>
	<i>Am-abātis,</i>	<i>Ye or you were loving,</i>
	<i>Am-ābant,</i>	<i>They were loving.</i>

PERFECT. *have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Am-āvi,</i>	<i>I have loved,</i>
	<i>Am-avisti,</i>	<i>Thou hast loved,</i>
	<i>Am-āvit,</i>	<i>He has loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Am-avimus,</i>	<i>We have loved,</i>
	<i>Am-avistis,</i>	<i>Ye or you have loved,</i>
	<i>Am-avērunt or am-avēre,</i>	<i>They have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Am-avēram,</i>	<i>I had loved,</i>
	<i>Am-avēras,</i>	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>
	<i>Am-avērat,</i>	<i>He had loved;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Am-averāmus,	<i>We had loved,</i>
	Am-averātis,	<i>Ye or you had loved,</i>
	Am-avērant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-ābo,	<i>I shall love,</i>
	Am-ābis,	<i>Thou wilt love,</i>
	Am-ābit,	<i>He will love;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-abīmus,	<i>We shall love.</i>
	Am-abītis,	<i>Ye or you will love,</i>
	Am-ābunt,	<i>They will love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-em,	<i>I may love,</i>
	Am-es,	<i>Thou mayest love,</i>
	Am-et,	<i>He may love;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-ēmus,	<i>We may love,</i>
	Am-ētis,	<i>Ye or you may love,</i>
	Am-ent,	<i>They may love.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would or should.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-ārem,	<i>I might love,</i>
	Am-āres,	<i>Thou mightest love,</i>
	Am-āret,	<i>He might love;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-arēmus,	<i>We might love,</i>
	Am-arētis,	<i>Ye or you might love,</i>
	Am-ārent,	<i>They might love.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-avērim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
	Am-avēris,	<i>Thou mayest have loved,</i>
	Am-avērit,	<i>He may have loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-averīmus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
	Am-averītis,	<i>Ye or you may have loved,</i>
	Am-avērint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-avissem,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
	Am-avisses,	<i>Thou mightest have loved,</i>
	Am-avisset,	<i>He might have loved;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Am-avissēmus, Am-avissētis, Am-avissent,	<i>We might have loved, Ye or you might have loved, They might have loved.</i>
----------------	--	--

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-avēro, Am-avēris, Am-avērit,	<i>I shall have loved, Thou wilt have loved, He will have loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-averīmus, Am-averītis, Am-avērint,	<i>We shall have loved, Ye or you will have loved, They will have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Am-a or amāto, 3. Am-āto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love, Let him love;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Am-āte or am-atōte, 3. Am-anto,	<i>Love ye, or do ye love, Let them love.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Am-āre,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Esse amatūrus, -a, um, Fuisse amatūrus, -a, um,	<i>To be about to love. To have been about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	Am-ans,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Am-atūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to love.</i>

GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Am-āndum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Am-andi,	<i>Of loving,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Am-āndo,	<i>To loving,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Am-ando,	<i>With loving.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i>	Am-ātum,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Am-ātu,	<i>To love, or to be loved.</i>

[Let the pupil now commit to memory the third and the eighteenth rules.]

EXAMPLES,

In which are introduced verbs of the first conjugation, and in the active voice only. The vocabulary is at the end of the verbs.

Deus creāvit mundum.	Vocavisti servum?
Colōnus arat arvum.	Vos sperabitis.
Nos clamaverimus.	Tu laboraveris.
Omnes honorārent bonos.	Equi tolērant magna pondēra.
Ille est promulgatūrus rumōres.	Nos invitarēmus. Explorātu.
Vos ædificāte domum.	Specta cælum.
Donātum. Vulnerando.	Canes latrābunt.
Tu propēra.	Ego declarāvi meam senten-
Nos parābimus cœnam.	tiam.

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Amor.	amāri.	amātus.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-or,	<i>I am loved,</i>
	Am-āris or -āre,	<i>Thou art loved,</i>
	Am-ātur,	<i>He is loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-āmur,	<i>We are loved,</i>
	Am-amīni,	<i>Ye or you are loved,</i>
	Am-antur,	<i>They are loved.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-ābar,	<i>I was loved,</i>
	Am-abāris or -abāre,	<i>Thou wast loved,</i>
	Am-abātur,	<i>He was loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-abāmur,	<i>We were loved,</i>
	Am-abamīni,	<i>Ye or you were loved,</i>
	Am-abantur,	<i>They were loved.</i>

PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Amātus sum or fui,	<i>I have been loved,</i>
	Amātus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been loved,</i>
	Amātus est or fuit,	<i>He has been loved,</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Amāti sumus or fuimus,	<i>We have been loved,</i>
	Amāti estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been loved,</i>
	Amāti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>They have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Amātus eram or fuēram,	<i>I had been loved,</i>
	Amātus eras or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been loved,</i>
	Amātus erat or fuērat,	<i>He had been loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Amāti erāmus or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been loved,</i>
	Amāti erātis or fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been loved,</i>
	Amāti erant or fuērant,	<i>They had been loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-ābor,	<i>I shall be loved,</i>
	Am-abēris or abēre,	<i>Thou wilt be loved,</i>
	Am-abītur,	<i>He will be loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-abīmur,	<i>We shall be loved,</i>
	Am-abimīni,	<i>Ye or you will be loved,,</i>
	Am-abuntur,	<i>They will be loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-er,	<i>I may be loved,</i>
	Am-ēris or -ēre,	<i>Thou mayest be loved,</i>
	Am-ētur,	<i>He may be loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-ēmur,	<i>We may be loved,</i>
	Am-emīni,	<i>Ye or you may be loved,</i>
	Am-entur,	<i>They may be loved.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Am-ārer,	<i>I might be loved,</i>
	Am-arēris or -arēre,	<i>Thou mightest be loved,</i>
	Am-arētur,	<i>He might be loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Am-arēmur,	<i>We might be loved,</i>
	Am-aremīni,	<i>Ye or you might be loved,</i>
	Am-arentur,	<i>They might be loved.</i>

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Amātus sim or fuērim,	<i>I may have been loved,</i>
	Amātus sis or fuēris,	<i>Thou mayest have been loved,</i>
	Amātus sit or fuērit,	<i>He may have been loved;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Amati simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been loved,</i>
	Amāti sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been loved,</i>
	Amāti sint or fuerint,	<i>They may have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Amātus essem or fuisset,	<i>I might have been loved,</i>
	Amātus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been loved,</i>
	Amātus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Amāti essēmus or fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been loved,</i>
	Amāti essētis or fuissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have been loved,</i>
	Amāti essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Amātus fuēro,	<i>I shall have been loved,</i>
	Amātus fuēris,	<i>Thou wilt have been loved,</i>
	Amātus fuērit,	<i>He will have been loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Amāti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been loved,</i>
	Amāti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been loved,</i>
	Amāti fuērint,	<i>They will have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Am-āre or am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved,</i>
	3. Am-ātor,	<i>Let him be loved;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Am-amīni,	<i>Be ye loved,</i>
	3. Am-antor,	<i>Let them be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Am-āri,	<i>To be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Esse or fuisse amātus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Amātum iri,	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Am-ātus, -a, -um,	<i>Loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Am-andus, -a, -um,	<i>To be loved.</i>

EXAMPLES.

Tu cruciabāris.	Illi rogāti fuērint.
Nos comparāmur.	explorandus.
Vos fugāti essēmus.	spoliātum iri.

Milites superantur.

Illi privabuntur.

Vos mitigamini.

Ille nominator.

Ego paratus fuero.

Ego vulneratus sim.

Tu delecteris.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Docēo.	docēre.	docui.	doctum.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *teach, do teach, or am teaching.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-eo,	<i>I teach,</i>
	Doc-es,	<i>Thou teachest, or you teach,</i>
	Doc-et,	<i>He teaches;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-ēmus,	<i>We teach,</i>
	Doc-ētis,	<i>Ye or you teach,</i>
	Doc-ent,	<i>They teach.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ēbam,	<i>I was teaching,</i>
	Doc-ēbas,	<i>Thou wast teaching,</i>
	Doc-ēbat,	<i>He was teaching;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-ebāmus,	<i>We were teaching,</i>
	Doc-ebātis,	<i>Ye or you were teaching,</i>
	Doc-ēbant,	<i>They were teaching.</i>

PERFECT. *have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ui,	<i>I have taught,</i>
	Doc-uisti,	<i>Thou hast taught,</i>
	Doc-uit,	<i>He has taught;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-uīmus,	<i>We have taught,</i>
	Doc-uistis,	<i>Ye or you have taught,</i>
	Doc-uērunt or doc-uēre,	<i>They have taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-uēram,	<i>I had taught,</i>
	Doc-uēras,	<i>Thou hadst taught,</i>
	Doc-uērat,	<i>He had taught;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-uērāmus, Doc-uērātis, Doc-uērant,	<i>We had taught, Ye or you had taught, They had taught.</i>
----------------	---	--

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ēbo, Doc-ēbis, Doc-ēbit,	<i>I shall teach, Thou wilt teach, He will teach;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-ebīmus, Doc-ebītis, Doc-ēbunt,	<i>We shall teach, Ye or you will teach, They will teach.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-eam, Doc-eas, Doc-eat,	<i>I may teach, Thou mayest teach, He may teach;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-eāmus, Doc-eātis, Doc-eant,	<i>We may teach, Ye or you may teach, They may teach.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ērem, Doc-ēres, Doc-ēret,	<i>I might teach, Thou mightest teach, He might teach;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-erēmus, Doc-erētis, Doc-ērent,	<i>We might teach, Ye or you might teach, They might teach.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-uērim, Doc-uēris, Doc-uērit,	<i>I may have taught, Thou mayest have taught, He may have taught;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-uērīmus, Doc-uērītis, Doc-uērint,	<i>We may have taught, Ye or you may have taught, They may have taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-uissem, Doc-uisses, Doc-uisset,	<i>I might have taught, Thou mightest have taught, He might have taught;</i>
------------------	---	--

<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-uissēmus,	<i>We might have taught,</i>
	Doc-uissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have taught,</i>
	Doc-uissent,	<i>They might have taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-uēro,	<i>I shall have taught,</i>
	Doc-uērīs,	<i>Thou wilt have taught,</i>
	Doc-uērit,	<i>He will have taught;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-uērīmus,	<i>We shall have taught,</i>
	Doc-uērītis,	<i>Ye or you will have taught,</i>
	Doc-uērint,	<i>They will have taught.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Doc-e or doc-ēto,	<i>Teach thou,</i>
	3. Doc-ēto,	<i>Let him teach;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Doc-ēte or doc-etōte,	<i>Teach ye or you,</i>
	3. Doc-ento,	<i>Let them teach.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Doc-ēre,	<i>To teach.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Doc-uisse,	<i>To have taught.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Esse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to teach.</i>
	Fuisse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to teach.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	Doo-ens,	<i>Teaching.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Doo-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to teach.</i>

GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Doc-endum,	<i>Teaching,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Doc-endi,	<i>Of teaching,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Doc-endo,	<i>To teaching,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Doc-endum,	<i>Teaching,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Doc-endo,	<i>With teaching.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i>	Doc-tum,	<i>To teach.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Doc-tu,	<i>To teach, or to be taught.</i>

[There are so many irregularities in this and the following Conjugations, that before the pupil goes farther, he had better commit the rules for the formation of the tenses, at the end of the Fourth Conjugation.]

EXAMPLES.

Præceptores monnērunt ejus discipūlos.

Nos prohibebīmus.

Servi parērent.

Canes mordēbunt fures.

Sol splendet.

Jusserāmus.

Visum.

Nos flemus.

Illi mansērint.

Leo terrēbit omnia animalia.

Tu exhibēres.

Ille nocitūrus me.

Manēbis tu?

Censuisse.

Ego monēbo illum.

Vide solem.

Ille teneat ejus locum.

Flores florent.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.

Dōcēor.

Pres. Infin.

dōcēri.

Perf. Part.

doctus.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Singular. Doc-eor,

Doc-ēris or doc-ēre,

Dōc-ētur,

Plural. Doc-ēmur,

Doc-emīni,

Doc-entur,

I am taught,

Thou art taught,

He is taught;

We are taught,

Ye or you are taught,

They are taught.

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Singular. Doc-ēbar,

Doc-ebāris or doc-ebāre,

Doe-ebātur,

Plural. Doc-ebāmur,

Doc-ebamīni,

Doc-ebantur,

I was taught,

Thou wast taught,

He was taught;

We were taught,

Ye or you were taught,

They were taught.

PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.*

Singular. Doctus sum or fui,

Doctus es or fuisti,

Doctus est or fuit,

I have been taught,

Thou hast been taught,

He has been taught;

<i>Plural.</i>	Docti sumus or fuīmus,	<i>We have been taught,</i>
	Docti estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been taught,</i>
	Docti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>They have been taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doctus eram or fuēram,	<i>I had been taught,</i>
	Doctus eras or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been taught,</i>
	Doctus erat or fuērat,	<i>He had been taught;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Docti erāmus or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been taught,</i>
	Docti erātis or fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been taught,</i>
	Docti erant or fuērant,	<i>They had been taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall, or will be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ēbor,	<i>I shall be taught,</i>
	Doc-ebēris or -ebēre,	<i>Thou wilt be taught,</i>
	Doc-ebitur,	<i>He will be taught;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-ebimur,	<i>We shall be taught,</i>
	Doc-ebimīni,	<i>Ye or you will be taught,</i>
	Doc-ebuntur,	<i>They will be taught.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may, or can be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ear,	<i>I may be taught,</i>
	Doc-eāris or doc-eāre,	<i>Thou mayest be taught,</i>
	Doc-eātur,	<i>He may be taught;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-eāmur,	<i>We may be taught,</i>
	Doc-eamīni,	<i>Ye or you may be taught,</i>
	Doc-eantur,	<i>They may be taught.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would or should be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doc-ērer,	<i>I might be taught,</i>
	Doc-erēris or doc-erēre,	<i>Thou mightest be taught,</i>
	Doc-erētur,	<i>He might be taught;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Doc-erēmur,	<i>We might be taught,</i>
	Doc-eremīni,	<i>Ye or you might be taught,</i>
	Doc-erentur,	<i>They might be taught.</i>

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Doctus sim or fuērim,	<i>I may have been taught,</i>
	Doctus sis or fuēris,	<i>Thou mayest have been taught,</i>
	Doctus sit or fuērit,	<i>He may have been taught;</i>

Plural.	Docti simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been taught,</i>
	Docti sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been taught,</i>
	Docti sint or fuerint,	<i>They may have been taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

Singular.	Doctus essem or fuisset,	<i>I might have been taught,</i>
	Doctus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been taught,</i>
	Doctus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been taught,</i>
Plural.	Docti essēmus or fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been taught,</i>
	Docti essētis or fuissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have been taught,</i>
	Docti essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Singular.	Doctus fuēro,	<i>I shall have been taught,</i>
	Doctus fuēris,	<i>Thou wilt have been taught,</i>
	Doctus fuērit,	<i>He will have been taught;</i>
Plural.	Docti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been taught,</i>
	Docti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been taught,</i>
	Docti fuerint,	<i>They will have been taught.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Singular.	2. Doc-ēre or doc-ētor,	<i>Be thou taught,</i>
	3. Doc-ētor,	<i>Let him be taught;</i>
Plural.	2. Doc-emīni,	<i>Be ye taught,</i>
	3. Doc-entor,	<i>Let them be taught.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present.	Doc-ēri,	<i>To be taught.</i>
Perfect.	Esse or fuisse doc-tus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been taught.</i>
Future.	Doctum iri,	<i>To be about to be taught.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	Doc-tus, -a, -um,	<i>Taught.</i>
Future.	Doo-endus, -a, -um,	<i>To be taught.</i>

EXAMPLES.

Cohibebāmur.	Torti essēmus.
Suasi fuērunt.	Tentus fuēris.
Tortum iri.	Deleamīni.

Delendus.
Adhibētus sit.
Jubeantur.

Monemīni.
Prohibēbor.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Lēgo.	lēgēre.	lēgi.	lectum.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *read, do read, or am reading.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-o,	<i>I read,</i>
	Leg-is,	<i>Thou readest,</i>
	Leg-it,	<i>He reads;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-īmus,	<i>We read,</i>
	Leg-ītis,	<i>Ye or you read,</i>
	Leg-unt,	<i>They read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ēbam,	<i>I was reading,</i>
	Leg-ēbas,	<i>Thou wast reading,</i>
	Leg-ēbat,	<i>He was reading;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-ebāmus,	<i>We were reading,</i>
	Leg-ebātis,	<i>Ye or you were reading,</i>
	Leg-ēbant,	<i>They were reading.</i>

PERFECT. *have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Lēgi,	<i>I have read,</i>
	Leg-isti,	<i>Thou hast read,</i>
	Lēgit,	<i>He has read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-īmus,	<i>We have read,</i>
	Leg-istis,	<i>Ye or you have read,</i>
	Leg-ērunt or leg-ēre,	<i>They have read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ēram,	<i>I had read,</i>
	Leg-ēras,	<i>Thou hadst read,</i>
	Leg-ērat,	<i>He had read;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-erāmus,	<i>We had read,</i>
	Leg-erātis,	<i>Ye or you had read,</i>
	Leg-erant,	<i>They had read.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-am,	<i>I shall read,</i>
	Leg-es,	<i>Thou wilt read,</i>
	Leg-et,	<i>He will read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-ēmus,	<i>We shall read,</i>
	Leg-ētis,	<i>Ye or you will read,</i>
	Leg-ent,	<i>They will read.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-am,	<i>I may read,</i>
	Leg-as,	<i>Thou mayest read,</i>
	Leg-at,	<i>He may read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-āmus,	<i>We may read,</i>
	Leg-ātis,	<i>Ye or you may read,</i>
	Leg-ant,	<i>They may read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would or should.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ērem,	<i>I might read,</i>
	Leg-ēres,	<i>Thou mightest read,</i>
	Leg-eret,	<i>He might read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-erēmus,	<i>We might read,</i>
	Leg-erētis,	<i>Ye or you might read,</i>
	Leg-erent,	<i>They might read.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ērim,	<i>I may have read,</i>
	Leg-ēris,	<i>Thou mayest have read,</i>
	Leg-erit,	<i>He may have read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-erīmus,	<i>We may have read,</i>
	Leg-erītis,	<i>Ye or you may have read,</i>
	Leg-erint,	<i>They may have read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-issem,	<i>I might have read,</i>
	Leg-isses,	<i>Thou mightest have read,</i>
	Leg-isset,	<i>He might have read;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-issēmus,	<i>We might have read,</i>
	Leg-issētis,	<i>Ye or you might have read,</i>
	Leg-issent,	<i>They might have read.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ēro;	<i>I shall have read,</i>
	Leg-ēris,	<i>Thou wilt have read,</i>
	Leg-ērit,	<i>He will have read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-erimus,	<i>We shall have read,</i>
	Leg-eritis,	<i>Ye or you will have read,</i>
	Leg-erint,	<i>They will have read.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Lēg-e or leg-ito,	<i>Read thou,</i>
	3. Leg-ito,	<i>Let him read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Leg-ite or leg-ītōte,	<i>Read ye, or you,</i>
	3. Leg-unto,	<i>Let them read.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Leg-ēre,	<i>To read,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lēg-isse,	<i>To have read.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Esse lectūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to read.</i>
	Fuisse lecturus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to read.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	Leg-ens,	<i>Reading.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Lec-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to read.</i>

GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Leg-endūm,	<i>Reading,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Leg-endi,	<i>Of reading,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Leg-endo,	<i>To reading,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Leg-endum,	<i>Reading,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Leg-endo,	<i>With reading.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i>	Lec-tum,	<i>To read.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Lec-tu,	<i>To read, or to be read.</i>

EXAMPLES.

Tempĕrans bibit aquam.	Scripsi multas epistolās.
Semper dice verum.	Omnes legĕrent optimos libros.
Non tange me.	Punctum.
Duxissĕtis.	Surrexĕris.
Liquĕro te.	Lusurus esse.
Misisse librum.	Solve ejus catēnas.
Puĕri tegĕrent eōrum libros.	Accende lucernam.
Calefecisti tuos pedes?	Gessissĕtis lignum.
Cæsar Romam rexit vincendo Pompeium.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Lĕgor.	lĕgi.	lectus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-or,	<i>I am read,</i>
	Leg-ĕris or -ĕre,	<i>Thou art read,</i>
	Leg-ĭtur,	<i>He is read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-ĭmur,	<i>We are read,</i>
	Leg-imĭni,	<i>Ye or you are read,</i>
	Leg-unĭtur,	<i>They are read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ĕbar,	<i>I was read,</i>
	Leg-ebāris or -ebāre,	<i>Thou wast read,</i>
	Leg-ebātur,	<i>He was read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-ebāmur,	<i>We were read,</i>
	Leg-ebamĭni,	<i>Ye or you were read,</i>
	Leg-ebantur,	<i>They were read.</i>

PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Lectus sum or fui,	<i>I have been read,</i>
	Lectus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been read,</i>
	Lectus est or fuit,	<i>He has been read;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Lecti sumus or fuīmus,	<i>We have been read,</i>
	Lecti estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been read,</i>
	Lecti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>They have been read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Lectus eram or fuēram,	<i>I had been read,</i>
	Lectus eras or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been read,</i>
	Lectus erat or fuērat,	<i>He had been read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lecti erāmus or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been read,</i>
	Lecti erātis or fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been read,</i>
	Lecti erant or fuērant,	<i>They had been read.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ar,	<i>I shall be read,</i>
	Leg-ēris or -ēre,	<i>Thou wilt be read,</i>
	Leg-ētur,	<i>He will be read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-ēmur,	<i>We shall be read,</i>
	Leg-emīni,	<i>Ye or you will be read,</i>
	Leg-entur,	<i>They will be read.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ar,	<i>I may be read,</i>
	Leg-āris or -āre,	<i>Thou mayest be read,</i>
	Leg-ātur,	<i>He may be read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-āmur,	<i>We may be read,</i>
	Leg-amīni,	<i>Ye or you may be read,</i>
	Leg-antur,	<i>They may be read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Leg-ērer,	<i>I might be read,</i>
	Leg-erēris or -erēre,	<i>Thou mightest be read,</i>
	Leg-erētur,	<i>He might be read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Leg-erēmur,	<i>We might be read,</i>
	Leg-eremīni,	<i>Ye or you might be read,</i>
	Leg-erentur,	<i>They might be read.</i>

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Lectus sim or fuërim,	<i>I may have been read,</i>
	Lectus sis or fuëris,	<i>Thou mayest have been read,</i>
	Lectus sit or fuërit,	<i>He may have been read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lecti simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been read,</i>
	Lecti sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been read,</i>
	Lecti sint or fuërint,	<i>They may have been read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Lectus essem or fuisset,	<i>I might have been read,</i>
	Lectus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been read,</i>
	Lectus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lecti essëmus or fuissëmus,	<i>We might have been read,</i>
	Lecti essëtis or fuissëtis,	<i>Ye or you might have been read,</i>
	Lecti essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been read.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Lectus fuëro,	<i>I shall have been read,</i>
	Lectus fuëris,	<i>Thou wilt have been read,</i>
	Lectus fuërit,	<i>He will have been read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lecti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been read,</i>
	Lecti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been read,</i>
	Lecti fuërint,	<i>They will have been read.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Leg-ëre or ïtor,	<i>Be thou read,</i>
	3. Leg-ïtor,	<i>Let him be read;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Leg-imïni,	<i>Be ye read,</i>
	3. Leg-untor,	<i>Let them be read.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Leg-i,	<i>To be read,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Esse or fuisse lectus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been read,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Lectum iri,	<i>To be about to be read.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Lectus, -a, -um,	<i>Read.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Legendus, -a, -um,	<i>To be read.</i>

EXAMPLES.

Vincebantur.	Poneremini.
Divisi eratis.	Quæsitus sit.
Lædāris.	Gerentur.
Regere.	Mittuntor.
Tangendus.	Petebamini.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Audīo.	audīre.	audīvi.	audītum.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *hear, do hear, or am hearing.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-io,	<i>I hear,</i>
	Aud-is,	<i>Thou hearest,</i>
	Aud-it,	<i>He hears;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-imus,	<i>We hear,</i>
	Aud-itis,	<i>Ye or you hear,</i>
	Aud-iunt,	<i>They hear.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iēbam,	<i>I was hearing,</i>
	Aud-iēbas,	<i>Thou wast hearing,</i>
	Aud-iēbat,	<i>He was hearing;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iēbāmus,	<i>We were hearing,</i>
	Aud-iebātis,	<i>Ye or you were hearing,</i>
	Aud-iēbant,	<i>They were hearing.</i>

PERFECT. *have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-īvi,	<i>I have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivisti,	<i>Thou hast heard,</i>
	Aud-īvit,	<i>He has heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-ivimus,	<i>We have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivistis,	<i>Ye or you have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivērunt or aud-ivēre,	<i>They have heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-ivĕram,	<i>I had heard,</i>
	Aud-ivĕras,	<i>Thou hadst heard,</i>
	Aud-ivĕrat,	<i>He had heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iverāmus,	<i>We had heard,</i>
	Aud-iverātis,	<i>Ye or you had heard,</i>
	Aud-ivĕrant,	<i>They had heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iam,	<i>I shall hear,</i>
	Aud-ies,	<i>Thou wilt hear,</i>
	Aud-iet,	<i>He will hear;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iĕmus,	<i>We shall hear,</i>
	Aud-iĕtis,	<i>Ye or you will hear,</i>
	Aud-ient,	<i>They will hear.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT. *may or can.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iam,	<i>I may hear,</i>
	Aud-ias,	<i>Thou mayest hear,</i>
	Aud-iat,	<i>He may hear;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iāmus,	<i>We may hear,</i>
	Aud-iātis,	<i>Ye or you may hear,</i>
	Aud-iānt,	<i>They may hear.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would or should.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-īrem,	<i>I might hear,</i>
	Aud-īres,	<i>Thou mightest hear,</i>
	Aud-īret,	<i>He might hear;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-irēmus,	<i>We might hear,</i>
	Aud-irētis,	<i>Ye or you might hear,</i>
	Aud-irent,	<i>They might hear.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-ivĕrim,	<i>I may have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivĕris,	<i>Thou mayest have heard,</i>
	Aud-ivĕrit,	<i>He may have heard;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iverīmus, Aud-iverītis, Aud-ivērint,	<i>We may have heard, Ye or you may have heard, They may have heard.</i>
----------------	--	--

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would or should have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-ivissem, Aud-ivisses, Aud-ivisset,	<i>I might have heard, Thou mightest have heard, He might have heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-ivissēmus, Aud-ivissētis, Aud-ivissent,	<i>We might have heard, Ye or you might have heard, They might have heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-ivēro, Aud-ivēris, Aud-ivērit,	<i>I shall have heard, Thou wilt have heard, He will have heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iverīmus, Aud-iverītis, Aud-ivērint,	<i>We shall have heard, Ye or you will have heard, They will have heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Aud-i or -īto, 3. Aud-īto,	<i>Hear thou, Let him hear;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Aud-īte or itōte, 3. Aud-iunto,	<i>Hear ye or you, Let them hear.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Aud-īre,	<i>To hear.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Aud-ivisse,	<i>To have heard.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Esse auditūrus, -a, -um, Fuisse auditūrus, -a -um,	<i>To be about to hear. To have been about to hear.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	Aud-iens,	<i>Hearing,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Aud-itūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to hear.</i>

GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Aud-iendi,	<i>Of hearing,</i>

<i>Dat.</i>	Aud-iendo,	<i>To hearing,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Aud-iendo,	<i>With hearing.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i>	Aud-ītum,	<i>To hear.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Aud-ītu,	<i>To hear, or to be heard.</i>

EXAMPLES.

Dormiēbam.	Sciēmus illum.
Erudivissēmus puēros.	Servīto.
Omnes nutriunto doctrīnam.	Sepelient corpus.
Obedivēras.	Venēro.
Leges punient malos.	Sentiātis

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Audior.	audīri.	audītus.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-ior,	<i>I am heard,</i>
	And-īris, or īre,	<i>Thou art heard,</i>
	Aud-ītur,	<i>He is heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-īmur,	<i>We are heard,</i>
	Aud-īmīni,	<i>Ye or you are heard,</i>
	Aud-iuntur,	<i>They are heard.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iēbar,	<i>I was heard,</i>
	Aud-iebāris or iebāre,	<i>Thou wast heard,</i>
	Aud-iebātur,	<i>He was heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iebāmur,	<i>We were heard,</i>
	Aud-iebamīni,	<i>Ye or you were heard,</i>
	Aud-iebantur,	<i>They were heard.</i>

PERFECT. have been.

<i>Singular.</i>	Audītus sum or fui,	<i>I have been heard,</i>
	Audītus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been heard,</i>
	Audītus est or fuit,	<i>He has been heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Audīti sumus or fuīmus,	<i>We have been heard,</i>
	Audīti estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been heard,</i>
	Audīti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>They have been heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. had been.

<i>Singular.</i>	Audītus eram or fuēram,	<i>I had been heard,</i>
	Audītus eras or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been heard,</i>
	Audītus erat or fuērat,	<i>He had been heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Audīti erāmus or fuēramus,	<i>We had been heard,</i>
	Audīti erātis or fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been heard,</i>
	Audīti erant or fuērant,	<i>They had been heard.</i>

FUTURE. shall or will be.

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iar,	<i>I shall be heard,</i>
	Aud-iēris or -iēre,	<i>Thou wilt be heard,</i>
	Aud-iētur,	<i>He will be heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iēmur,	<i>We shall be heard,</i>
	Aud-iemīni,	<i>Ye or you will be heard,</i>
	Aud-ientur,	<i>They will be heard.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.**PRESENT TENSE. may or can be.**

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-iar,	<i>I may be heard,</i>
	Aud-iāris or iāre,	<i>Thou mayest be heard,</i>
	Aud-iātur,	<i>He may be heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-iāmur,	<i>We may be heard,</i>
	Aud-iamīni,	<i>Ye or you may be heard,</i>
	Aud-iantur,	<i>They may be heard.</i>

IMPERFECT. might, could, would, or should be.

<i>Singular.</i>	Aud-īrer,	<i>I might be heard,</i>
	Aud-irēris or -irēre,	<i>Thou mightest be heard,</i>
	Aud-irētur,	<i>He might be heard;</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	Aud-irēmur, Aud-irem ^{ur} , Aud-irontur,	<i>We might be heard, Ye or you might be heard, They might be heard.</i>
----------------	---	--

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Audītus sim or fuērim, Audītus sis or fuēris, Audītus sit or fuērit,	<i>I may have been heard, Thou mayest have been heard, He may have been heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Audīti simus or fuerimus, Audīti sitis or fueritis, Audīti sint or fuērint,	<i>We may have been heard, Ye or you may have been heard, They may have been heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Audītus essem or fuissem, Audītus esses or fuisses, Audītus esset or fuisset,	<i>I might have been heard, Thou mightest have been heard, He might have been heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Audīti essēmus or fuissēmus, Audīti essētis or fuissētis, Audīti essent or fuissent,	<i>We might have been heard, Ye or you might have been heard, They might have been heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Singular.</i>	Audītus fuēro, Audītus fuēris, Audītus fuērit,	<i>I shall have been heard, Thou wilt have been heard, He will have been heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Audīti fuerimus, Audīti fueritis, Audīti fuērint,	<i>We shall have been heard, Ye or you will have been heard, They will have been heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	2. Aud-ire or -itor, 3. Aud-itor,	<i>Be thou heard, Let him be heard;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	2. Aud-imīni, 3. Aud-iuntor,	<i>Be ye heard, Let them be heard.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Present.</i>	Aud-iri,	<i>To be heard.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Esse or fuisse audītus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been heard.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Audītum iri,	<i>To be about to be heard.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Aud-ītus,	<i>Heard.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Aud-iendus,	<i>To be heard.</i>

EXAMPLES.

Obediamini.	Vestirēmur.
Nutriebāris,	Irretiuntur.
Erudītus fuēro.	Vincientur.
Vestiendus.	Nutritus.
Redimīti sitis.	

VOCABULARY.*

Accendo, accendēre, accendi, accensum; act. *to light up.*

Adhibeo, adhibēre, adhibui, adhibītum; act. *to admit.*

Ædifico, ædificāre, ædificāvi, ædificātum; act. *to build, to create.*

Animal, animālis; noun, neut. *an animal.*

Aqua, aquæ; noun, fem. *water.*

Aro, arāre, arāvi, arātum; act. *to plough.*

Arvum, arvi; noun, neut. *the ground.*

Bibo, bibēre, bibi, bibītum; act. *to drink.*

Bonus, bona, bonum; adj. 1st & 2d declen. *good.*

Cælum, cæli; noun, neut. *the sky.*

Cæna, cænæ; noun, fem. *supper.*

Cæsar, Cæsāris; noun, masc. *Cæsar*, the name of a great Roman general.

Calefacio, calefacēre, calefēci, calefactum; act. *to warm.*

Catēna, catēnæ; noun, fem. *a chain.*

Canis, canis; noun, com. *a dog.*

Censeo, censēre, censui, censum; neut. *to judge.*

* The conjugations of the verbs and the declensions of the nouns are not put down here, as the scholar will know the former by the infinitive, and the latter by the genitive case.

- Clamo, clamāre, clamāvi, clamātum; act. *to cry*.
 Cohibeo, cohibēre, cohibui, cohibitum; act. *to restrain*.
 Colōnus, colōni; noun, masc. *a husbandman*.
 Compāro, comparāre, comparāvi, comparātum; act. *to compare*.
 Corpus, corpōris; noun, neut. *the body*.
 Creo, creāre, creāvi, creatum; act. *to create*.
 Crucio, cruciāre, cruciāvi, cruciātum; act. *to torment*.
 Declāro, declarāre, declarāvi, declarātum; act. *to declare*.
 Delecto, delectāre, delectāvi, delectātum; act. *to delight*.
 Deleo, delēre, delēvi, delētum; act. *to destroy*.
 Deus, Dei; noun, masc. *God*.
 Dico, dicēre, dixi, dictum; act. *to say, to speak*.
 Discipūlus, discipuli; noun, masc. *a scholar*.
 Divīdo, dividēre, divīsi, divīsum; act. *to divide*.
 Doctrīna, doctrīnæ; noun, fem. *learning*.
 Domus, domūs and domi; noun, fem. *a house*. See page 27.
 Dono, donāre, donāvi, donātum; act. *to present, to give*.
 Dormio, dormīre, dormīvi, dormitum; neut. *to sleep*.
 Duco, ducēre, duxi, ductum; act. *to lead*.
 Epistōla, epistolæ; noun, fem. *a letter*.
 Equus, equi; noun, masc. *a horse*.
 Erudio, erudīre, erudīvi, eruditum; act. *to instruct*.
 Exhibeo, exhibēre, exhibui, exhibitum; act. *to show, to exhibit*.
 Explōro, explorāre, explorāvi, explorātum; act. *to search*.
 Fleo, flēre, flevi, fletum; neut. *to weep*.
 Floreo, florēre, florui; (no supine,) neut. *to flourish*.
 Flos, flōris; noun, masc. *a flower*.
 Fugo, fugāre, fugāvi, fugātum; act. *to rout, or put to flight*.
 Fur, furis; noun, com. *a thief, a robber*.
 Gero, gerēre, gessi, gestum; act. *to carry*.
 Honoro, honorāre, honorāvi, honorātum; act. *to honor*.
 Invīto, invitāre, invitāvi, invitātum; act. *to invite*.
 Irretio, irretīre, irretīvi, irretītum; act. *to ensnare*.
 Jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum; act. *to order*.
 Labōro, laborāre, laborāvi, laborātum; act. and neut. *to labour*.
 Lædo, lædēre, læsi, læsum; act. *to hurt*.
 Latro, latrāre, latrāvi, latrātum; neut. *to bark*.
 Lego, legēre, legi, lectum; act. *to read*.
 Leo, leōnis; noun, masc. *a lion*.

- Lex, legis; noun, fem. *a law.* Pl.
- Liber, libri; noun, masc. *a book.*
- Lignum, ligni; noun, neut. *wood.*
- Linguo, linguere, liqui; (no supine,) act. *to leave.*
- Locus, loci; noun, masc. *a place.* In the plural it is both masc. and neut. making *loci* and *loca* in the nom.
- Lucerna, lucernæ; noun, fem. *a lamp, a candle.*
- Ludo, ludere, lusi, lusum; neut. *to play.*
- Magnus, magna, magnum; adj. 1st & 2d declen. *great.*
- Maneo, manere, mansi, mansum; neut. *to remain.*
- Meus, mea, meum; adj. pro. *my.*
- Miles, militis; noun, com. *a soldier.*
- Mitigo, mitigare, mitigavi, mitigatum; act. *to pacify.*
- Mitto, mittere, misi, missum; act. *to send.*
- Moneo, monere, monui, monitum; act. *to admonish.*
- Mordeo, mordere, momordi, morsum; act. *to bite.*
- Multus, multa, multum; adj. 1st & 2d declen. *much, many.*
- Mundus, mundi; noun, masc. *the world.*
- Noceo, nocere, nocui, nocitum; act. *to hurt.*
- Nomino, nominare, nominavi, nominatum; act. *to name.*
- Non; adverb, *not.*
- Nutrio, nutrire, nutriti, nutritum; act. *to nourish, to cherish, to foster.*
- Obedio, obedire, obedi, obeditum; neut. *to obey.*
- Omnis, omnis, omne; adj. 3d declen. *all, every.*
- Optimus, optima, optimum; adj. 1st & 2d declen. *the best.* It is the superlative degree of *bonus*, which see on page 40.
- Pareo, parere, parui, paritum; neut. *to obey.*
- Paro, parare, paravi, paratum; act. *to prepare.*
- Pes, pedis; noun, masc. *the foot.*
- Peto, petere, petivi, petitum; act. *to seek.*
- Pompeius, Pompeii; noun, masc. *Pompey, who was a Roman general.*
- Pondus, ponderis; noun, neut. *a load, a weight.*
- Pono, ponere, posui, positum; act. *to place, to put.*
- Porto, portare, portavi, portatum; act. *to carry.*
- Præceptor, præceptoris; noun, masc. *a preceptor.*
- Privo, privare, privavi, privatum; act. *to deprive.*
- Prohibeo, prohibere, prohibui, prohibitum; act. *to hinder, to prohibit.*
- Promulgo, promulgare, promulgavi, promulgatum; act. *to publish.*
- Propero, properare, properavi, properatum; act. & neut. *to hasten.*

Puer, puēri; noun, masc. *a boy.*

Pungo, pungēre, pupūgi, punctum; act. *to prick.*

Punio, punīre, punīvi, punītum; act. *to punish.*

Quæro, quærēre, quæsīvi, quæsītum; act. *to seek.*

Redimio, redimīre, redimīvi, redimītum; act. *to bind.*

Rego, regēre, rexi, rectum; act. *to rule, to govern.*

Rogo, rogāre, rogāvi, rogātum; act. *to ask.*

Rumor, rumōris; noun, masc. *a rumor*; in the plural, *news.*

Scio, scīre, scīvi, scītum; act. *to know.*

Scribo, scribēre, scripsi, scriptum; act. *to write.*

Semper; adverb, *always.*

Sententia, sententiæ; noun, fem. *an opinion.*

Sentio, sentīre, sensi, sensum; act. *to feel.*

Sepelio, sepelīre, sepelīvi, sepultum; act. *to bury.*

Servio, servīre, servīvi, servītum; act. *to serve, to obey.*

Servus, servi; noun, masc. *a servant.*

Sol, solis; noun, masc. *the sun.*

Solvo, solvēre, solvi, solūtum; act. *to loose.*

Specto, spectāre, spectāvi, spectātum; act. *to behold.*

Spero, sperāre, sperāvi, sperātum; act. *to hope.*

Splendo, splendēre, splendui, (no supine;) neut. *to shine.*

Spolio, spoliāre, spoliāvi, spoliātum; act. *to rob.*

Suadeo, suadēre, suāsi, suāsum; act. *to advise.*

Supĕro, superāre, superāvi, superātum, act. *to conquer.*

Surgo, surgēre, surrexi, surrectum; neut. generally; but sometimes act. *to rise.*

Tango, tangēre, tetīgi, tactum; act. *to touch.*

Tego, tegēre, texi, tectum, act. *to cover.*

Temperans, temperans, temperans; adj. 3d declen. *temperate.*

When it is not joined to any noun, it means *a temperate man, or woman.*

Teneo, tenēre, tenui, tentum; act. *to hold, to keep.*

Terreo, terrēre, terrui, terrītum; act. *to frighten.*

Tolĕro, tolerāre, tolerāvi, tolerātum; act. *to bear.*

Torqueo, torquēre, torsi, tortum; act. *to twist, to twirl.*

Tuus, tua, tuum; adj. pronoun, *thy, your.*

Venio, venīre, vēni, ventum; neut. *to come.*

Verum, veri, noun, neut. *the truth.*

Vestio, vestīre, vestīvi, vestītum; act. *to clothe.*

Video, vidēre, vīdi, visum; act. *to see.*

Vincio, vincĕre, vinxi, victum; act. *to bind*.

Vinco, vincĕre, vici, victum; act. *to overcome, to conquer*.

Voco, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātum; act. *to call*.

Vulnĕro, vulnerāre, vulnerāvi, vulnerātum; act. *to wound*.

FORMATION OF VERBS.

Q. How many principal parts of a verb are there from which all the others are formed?

A. Four.

Q. What are they?

A. They are *O*, the ending of the *present* tense; *I*, the ending of the *perfect* tense; *RE*, the ending of the *infinitive* mode; and *UM*, the ending of the *supine*.

Q. When is a verb said to be *conjugated*?

A. When all these four parts are mentioned, because from these all the rest are derived.

Q. What is called the *Theme*, or *Root* of the verb?

A. The first person singular, of the *indicative* mode, *present* tense; because from this the other three parts are formed.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Q. How is the *Imperfect* tense formed?

A. The *Imperfect indicative* is formed from the *present*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābam*; as, *amā-o*, *am-ābam*:—in the second conjugation, by changing *o* into *ebam*; as, *doce-o*, *docē-bam*:—in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ēbam*; as *leg-o*, *leg-ēbam*; *audi-o*, *audi-ēbam*.

Q. How is the *Pluperfect* tense of the Indicative formed?

A. The *Pluperfect indicative* is formed from the *perfect* in all the conjugations by changing *i* into *eram*; as, *amāv-i*, *amāv-eram*; *docu-i*, *docu-eram*; *leg-i*, *leg-eram*; *audī-i*, *audī-eram*.

Q. How is the *Future* tense formed?

A. The *Future indicative* is formed from the *present*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābo*; as, *am-o*, *am-ābo*; in the second conjugation by changing *o* into *bo*; as, *doce-o*, *docē-bo*; in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-am*; *audī-o*, *audī-am*.

Subjunctive Mode.

Q. How is the *Present* tense, Subjunctive, formed?

A. The *Present subjunctive* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *em*; as, *am-o*, *am-em*; in the second, third, and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am*; as, *doce-o*, *doce-am*; *leg-o*, *leg-am*; *audī-o*, *audī-am*.

Q. How is the *Imperfect* tense formed?

A. The *Imperfect subjunctive* is formed, in all the conjugations, from the present infinitive, by adding *m*; as, *amāre*, *amārem*; *docēre*, *docērem*; *legēre*, *legērem*; *audīre*, *audīrem*.

Q. How is the *Perfect* formed?

A. The *Perfect subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *erim*; as, *amāv-i*, *amāv-erim*; *docu-i*, *docu-erim*; *leg-i*, *leg-erim*; *audī-i*, *audī-erim*.

Q. How is the *Pluperfect* formed?

A. The *Pluperfect subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *issem*; as, *amāv-i*, *amāv-issem*; *docu-i*, *docu-issem*; *leg-i*, *leg-issem*; *audī-i*, *audī-issem*.

Q. How is the *Future* tense formed?

A. The *Future subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *ĕro*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-ĕro*; *docu-i*, *docu-ĕro*; *leg-i*, *leg-ĕro*, *audīv-i*, *audio-ĕro*.

Imperative Mode.

Q. How is the *Imperative* mode formed?

A. The *Present imperative* is formed from the present infinitive, by taking away *re*; as, *amāre*, *ama*; *docēre*, *doce*; *legere*, *lege*; *audire*, *audi*.

Infinitive Mode.

Q. How is the *Present infinitive* formed?

A. The *Present infinitive* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *āre*; as, *am-o*, *am-āre*; in the second and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *re*; as, *doce-o*, *docē-re*; *audi-o*, *audī-re*; in the third conjugation, by changing *o* or *io* into *ĕre*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-ĕre*; *cap-io*, *cap-ĕrē*.

Q. How is the *Perfect* formed?

A. The *Perfect infinitive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *isse*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-isse*; *docu-i*, *docu-isse*; *leg-i*, *leg-isse*; *audīv-i*, *audio-isse*.

Q. How is the *Future* formed?

A. The *Future infinitive* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus*, and adding *esse*, or *fuisse*; as, *amātū-m*, *amatū-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse*; *doctū-m*, *doctū-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse*; *lectū-m*, *lectū-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse*; *audītū-m*, *audītū-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse*.

Participles.

Q. How is the *Present Participle* formed?

A. The *Present Participle* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ans*;

as, *am-o*, *am-ans*; in the second conjugation, by changing *o* into *ns*; as, *doce-o*, *doce-ns*; in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ens*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-ens*; *audi-o*, *audi-ens*.

Q. How is the *Future Participle* formed?

A. The *Future Participle* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus*; as, *amātu-m*, *amatū-rus*; *doctū-m*, *doctū-rus*; *lectū-m*, *lectū-rus*; *audītu-m*, *audītū-rus*.

Gerunds.

Q. How are the *Gerunds* formed?

A. The *Gerunds* are formed from the present participle, by changing *s* into *dum*, *di*, and *do*; as,

<i>aman-s</i> ;	<i>aman-dum</i> ,	<i>aman-di</i> ,	<i>aman-do</i> ;
<i>docen-s</i> ;	<i>docen-dum</i> ,	<i>docen-di</i> ,	<i>docen-do</i> ;
<i>legen-s</i> ;	<i>legen-dum</i> ,	<i>legen-di</i> ,	<i>legen-do</i> ;
<i>audien-s</i> ;	<i>audien-dum</i> ,	<i>audien-di</i> ,	<i>audien-do</i> .

FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative and Subjunctive Modes.

Q. What five tenses in these modes are formed from the same tenses in the active voice?

A. The *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future Indicative*; and the *Present*, and *Imperfect Subjunctive*, are formed from the corresponding tenses in the active voice.

Q. How are they formed?

A. From those tenses in the active voice which end in *o*, the same tenses in the passive are formed by adding *r*; but from those which, in the active voice, end in *m*, the same tenses of the passive are formed by changing *m* into *r*.

Q. Can you give me some examples?

A PARADIGM*

Of the Tenses of the Active Voice of the Four Conjugations according to the preceding Formation.

1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.	Names of the Tenses.
From AMO, are formed Amābam,	From MONEO, are formed monēbam,	From REGO, are formed regēbam,	From AUDIO, are formed audiēbam	Present Indicative.
Amābo,	monēbo,	regam,	audiam,	Imperfect Indicative.
Amem,	moneam,	regam,	audiam,	Future Indicative.
Amans,	monens,	regens,	audiens,	Present Subjunctive.
Amandum,	monendum,	regendum,	audiendum,	Present Participle.
Amandi,	monendi,	regendi,	audiendi,	Gerunds.
Amando, &c.	monendo, &c.	regendo, &c.	audiendo, &c.	

* *Paradigma* means an example, exhibition, or model.

A PARADIGM—(Continued.)

<i>From</i> AMARE, <i>are formed</i> Amā,	<i>From</i> MONĒRE, <i>are formed</i> monē,	<i>From</i> REGĒRE, <i>are formed</i> rege,	<i>From</i> AUDIRE, <i>are formed</i> audi,	<i>Present Infinitive.</i>
Amārem,	monērem,	regērem,	audīrem,	<i>Imperative.</i>
AMAVI,	MONUI,	REXI,	AUDIVI	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive.</i>
Amavēram,	monuēram,	rexēram,	audivēram,	<i>Perfect Indicative.</i>
Amavērim,	monuērim,	rexērim,	audivērim,	<i>Pluperfect Indicative.</i>
Amavissem,	monuissem,	rexissem,	audvissem,	<i>Perfect Subjunctive.</i>
Amavēro,	monuēro,	rexēro,	audivēro,	<i>Pluperfect Subjunctive.</i>
Amavisse,	monuisse,	rexisse,	audivisse,	<i>Future Subjunctive.</i>
AMATUM,	MONITUM,	RECTUM,	AUDITUM,	<i>Perfect Infinitive.</i>
Amātu,	monītu,	rectū,	audītu,	<i>Former Supine.</i>
Amatūrus,	monitūrus,	rectūrus,	auditūrus,	<i>Latter Supine.</i>
				<i>Future Participle.</i>

DEPONENT VERBS.

Q. What is a *Deponent* verb?

A. A *Deponent* verb is a verb which has a passive form, but an active signification.

Q. Why is a verb called *Deponent*?

A. It is so called because it has *laid aside*, or *put off* its active voice and passive sense: from two Latin words, *pono*, which means *to put* or *place*, and *de*, *off*, or *from*, as if we should call it in English a *put off* verb?

Q. How many participles has a deponent verb?

A. Four: two of which, namely, the *present* and one of the *futures*, are of the active form.

Q. Will you conjugate the *Deponent* verb *Lætor*, I rejoice, which is of the first conjugation, like *amor*?

Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect.

A. *Lætor*, *Lætāri*, *Lætatus sum*.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Lætor</i> ,	<i>I rejoice</i> ,
	<i>Lætāris</i> , or <i>Lætāre</i> ,	<i>Thou rejoicest</i> ,
	<i>Lætātur</i> ,	<i>He rejoices</i> ;
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Lætāmur</i> ,	<i>We rejoice</i> ,
	<i>Lætāmīni</i> ,	<i>Ye or you rejoice</i> ,
	<i>Lætantur</i> ,	<i>They rejoice</i> .

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Lætābar</i> ,	<i>I rejoiced</i> ,
	<i>Lætābāris</i> , or <i>Lætābāre</i> ,	<i>Thou rejoicest</i> ,
	<i>Lætābātur</i> ,	<i>He rejoiced</i> ;
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Lætābāmur</i> ,	<i>We rejoiced</i> ,
	<i>Lætābāmīni</i> ,	<i>Ye or you rejoiced</i> ,
	<i>Lætābantur</i> ,	<i>They rejoiced</i> .

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætātus sum,	<i>I have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætatus es,	<i>Thou hast rejoiced,</i>
	Lætātus est,	<i>He has rejoiced;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætāti sumus,	<i>We have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti estis,	<i>Ye or you have rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti sunt,	<i>They have rejoiced.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætātus eram,	<i>I had rejoiced,</i>
	Lætātus eras,	<i>Thou hadst rejoiced,</i>
	Lætātus erat,	<i>He had rejoiced;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætāti erāmus,	<i>We had rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti erātis,	<i>Ye or you had rejoiced,</i>
	Lætāti erant,	<i>They had rejoiced.</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætabor,	<i>I shall rejoice,</i>
	Lætabēris, or lætabēre,	<i>Thou wilt rejoice,</i>
	Lætabŷtur,	<i>He will rejoice;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætabŷmur,	<i>We shall rejoice,</i>
	Lætabimŷni,	<i>Ye or you will rejoice,</i>
	Lætabuntur,	<i>They will rejoice.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Læter,	<i>I may rejoice,</i>
	Lætēris or lætēre,	<i>Thou mayest rejoice,</i>
	Lætētur,	<i>He may rejoice;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	Lætēmur,	<i>We may rejoice,</i>
	Lætēmŷni,	<i>Ye or you may rejoice,</i>
	Lætentur,	<i>They may rejoice.</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	Lætārer,	<i>I might rejoice,</i>
	Lætārēris or lætarēre,	<i>Thou mightest rejoice,</i>
	Lætārētur,	<i>He might rejoice;</i>

Plural.	Lætārēmur, Lætāremīni, Lætarentur,	<i>We might rejoice, Ye or you might rejoice, They might rejoice.</i>
----------------	--	---

PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætātus sim, Lætātus sis, Lætātus sit,	<i>I may have rejoiced, Thou mayest have rejoiced, He may have rejoiced;</i>
Plural.	Lætāti simus, Lætāti sitis, Lætāti sint,	<i>We may have rejoiced, Ye or you may have rejoiced, They may have rejoiced.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætātus essem, Lætātus esses, Lætātus esset,	<i>I might have rejoiced, Thou mightest have rejoiced, He might have rejoiced;</i>
Plural.	Lætāti essemus, Lætāti essetis, Lætāti essent,	<i>We might have rejoiced, Ye or you might have rejoiced, They might have rejoiced.</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.	Lætātus fuēro, Lætātus fuēris, Lætātus fuērit,	<i>I shall have rejoiced, Thou wilt have rejoiced, He will have rejoiced;</i>
Plural.	Lætāti fuerimus, Lætāti fueritis, Lætāti fuerint,	<i>We shall have rejoiced, Ye or you will have rejoiced, They will have rejoiced.</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Singular.	2. Lætāre or lētātor, 3. Lētātor,	<i>Rejoice thou, or do thou rejoice, Let him rejoice;</i>
Plural.	2. Lētamīni, 3. Lētantor,	<i>Rejoice ye, or do ye rejoice, Let them rejoice.</i>

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present.	Lētāri,	<i>To rejoice.</i>
Perfect.	Lētātus esse or fuisse,	<i>To have rejoiced.</i>
Future.	Lētātūrus esse, Lētātūrus fuisse;	<i>To be about to rejoice. To have been about to rejoice.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	Lætans,	<i>Rejoicing.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lætātus,	<i>Having rejoiced.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Lætatūrus,	<i>About to rejoice.</i>
	Lætandus,	<i>To be rejoiced at.</i>

Q. Are all *Deponent* verbs of the first conjugation declined in this manner?

A. Yes.

Q. How are those of the other three conjugations declined?

A. In the same general manner, making those alterations which are peculiar to each conjugation.

EXAMPLES.

Arbitrabāmur.	Ortūri.	Tutātus sim.
Merītus sis.	Expertus est.	Amplectendus.
Questus fuēro.	Mirandus.	Blanditūrus esse.
Domināre.	Lamentāri.	Mori.
Recordantur.	Contemplaremini.	Experiuntor.
Tutamini.	Vagabatur.	Usus.
Operatūrus fuisse.	Gloriati fueritis.	Usus esse.
Partiens.	Prædantur.	Interpretātus esses.
Pacti essētis.		

VOCABULARY OF DEPONENT VERBS.

Amplector, amplecti, amplexus sum; 3d conj. *to embrace.*
 Arbitror, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum; 1st conj. *to think.*
 Blandior, blandiri, blanditus sum; 4th conj. *to flatter.*
 Contemplor, contemplāri, contemplātus sum; 1st conj. *to behold.*
 Domīnor, domināri, domīnātus sum; 1st conj. *to rule.*
 Experior, experiri, expertus sum; 4th conj. *to try.*

Glorior, gloriāri, gloriātus sum; 1st conj. to boast.
Interprētor, interpretāri, interpretātus sum; 1st conj. to explain.
Lamentor, lamentāri, lamentātus sum; 1st conj. to bewail.
Mereor, merēri, merītus sum; 2d conj. to deserve.
Miror, mirāri, mirātus sum; 1st conj. to wonder.
Morior, mori, mortuus sum; 3d conj. to die.
Opēror, operāri, operātus sum; 1st conj. to work.
Orior, ori and oriri, ortus sum; 3d and 4th conj. to rise.
Paciscor, pacisci, pactus sum; 3d conj. to bargain.
Partior, partiri, partitus sum; 4th conj. to divide.
Prædor, prædāri, prædātus sum; 1st conj. to plunder.
Queror, queri, questus sum; 3d conj. to complain.
Recordor, recordāri, recordātus sum; 1st conj. to remember.
Tutor, tutāri, tutātus sum; 1st conj. to defend.
Utor, uti, usus sum; 3d conj. to use.
Vagor, vagāri, vagātus sum; 1st conj. to wander.

PARTICIPLES.

Q. What is a *Participle*?

A. A *Participle* is a kind of adjective, formed from a verb; and in its meaning it has reference to time.

Q. Why is it called a *Participle*?

A. From the Latin word *particeps*, a partaker, one who takes part of any thing, because it partakes of the nature of an adjective and a verb.

Q. How many participles has a Latin verb?

A. Four: two in the active voice, as *amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love; and two in the passive voice, as *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

GERUNDS.

Q. What are *Gerunds*?

A. *Gerunds* are participial words, partaking of the nature of a noun, and of a verb.

Q. How are they like nouns?

A. In their form: for they are declined in all cases except the vocative, like a neuter noun of the *second declension*, and are governed like nouns.

Q. In what respects are they like verbs?

A. In their possessing time, and having the signification of the verbs from which they are derived, and governing the same case.

SUPINES.

Q. What are *Supines*?

A. *Supines* are also participial words. They are like the accusative and ablative cases of nouns of the *fourth declension*, and have the signification of the verb from which they are derived.

ADVERBS.

Q. What is an *Adverb*?

A. An *Adverb* is an indeclinable word *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, to affect or alter its signification.

Q. Why is it so called?

A. From the Latin word *ad*, which means *to*, and from *verbum*, which means a *word*; because it is always connected with some verb, adjective or other adverb.

PREPOSITIONS.

Q. What is a *Preposition*?

A. A *Preposition* is an indeclinable word, which shows the relation of one thing to another; and which governs nouns in the accusative and ablative cases.

Q. From what do *Prepositions* derive their name?

A. From two Latin words, namely, *præ*, which means *before*; and *positum*, (the supine of the verb *pono*), which

means *to put* or *place*; as these words are always *placed before* nouns.

Q. How many prepositions govern the accusative case?

A. Thirty-two.*

EXAMPLES OF PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.¹

Ad,	<i>to;</i>	Cicero scripsit ² epistolas <i>ad</i> Atticum.
Adversum,	<i>against;</i>	Bonus civis facit nihil <i>adversum</i> leges.
Adversus,	<i>opposite to;</i>	Carthago fuit <i>adversus</i> Italiam.
	<i>towards;</i>	Cole ³ justitiam <i>adversus</i> omnes.
Ante,	<i>before;</i>	Venit <i>ante</i> noctem.
Apud,	<i>at;</i>	Cæsar posuit ⁴ ejus ⁵ castra <i>apud</i> Iconium.
	<i>among;</i>	Bonus vir amabitur <i>apud</i> omnes.
Circa,	<i>about;</i>	Reges habent præsidia <i>circum</i> se.
Circum,	<i>about;</i>	Fuit negligens <i>circa</i> ejus salutem.
Circiter,	<i>about;</i>	Ille venit ad me <i>circiter</i> octavam horam.
Cis,	<i>on this side;</i>	Gallia est <i>citra</i> Italiam.
Citra,	<i>within;</i>	Videbo te <i>cis</i> paucos dies.
Contra,	<i>against;</i>	Ille vivit <i>contra</i> naturam.
	<i>contrary to;</i>	Hannibal duxit exercitum ad Romam <i>contra</i> expectationem.
Erga,	<i>towards;</i>	Deus est bonus <i>erga</i> homines.
Extra,	<i>without;</i>	Ille est <i>extra</i> vitium.
Infra,	<i>beneath;</i>	Vitiōsus vir est <i>infra</i> observationem ullius.
	<i>within;</i>	Veni <i>infra</i> decem dies.

* The pupil had better commit them to memory.

The words will be found in the general vocabulary.

¹ See *scribo*.

² Imperative mode of *colo*.

³ See *pono*.

⁴ *Ejus* genitive singular of *is*, (see page 44,) and means *of him*, or *of her*, or *of it*; and may be translated *his*, *hers*, or *its*; as,

pone ejus tergum,
behind his back.

⁵ See *duco*.

Inter,	between;	Amor <i>inter</i> liberos et parentes est magnus.
	in the midst of;	Epaminondas perit <i>inter</i> pugnam.
Intra,	within;	<i>Intra</i> decem dies: <i>intra</i> muros.
Juxta,	near;	Tumulus Hectōris est <i>juxta</i> Trojam.
Ob,	for;	Faciam id <i>ob</i> suum emolumentum.
Penes,	in the power of;	Omnes sunt <i>penes</i> Deum.
Per,	through;	Nauta agit navim <i>per</i> mare, et <i>per</i> scopulos.
	by;	Servitium interdicitur <i>per</i> naturam et <i>per</i> leges.
	with permission of;	Non facies <i>per</i> me.
Pone,	behind;	Manus victæ sunt ¹ <i>pone</i> ejus tergum.
Post,	after;	<i>Post</i> mortem est judicium.
Præter,	except;	Omnes, <i>præter</i> unum, condemnaverunt eum.
	before;	Hector occisus est ² <i>præter</i> oculos Trojanorum.
	contrary to;	Recepi tuas epistolas <i>præter</i> expectationem.
Prope, ³	near;	Siste <i>prope</i> me.
	about;	Sere frumentum <i>prope</i> mensem Junii.
Propter,	{ near, or by the side of;	{ Amnis Eurōtas fuit <i>propter</i> Lacedæmonem.
	on account of;	Amo te <i>propter</i> sinceritatem.
Secundum,	after, next to;	Ama tuos parentes <i>secundum</i> Deum.
	according to;	Mors est <i>secundum</i> naturam.
Secus,	by, along;	Processit ⁴ <i>secus</i> viam ad Roman.
Supra,	above, over;	Nubes sunt <i>supra</i> nos.
Trans,	over, across;	Via ad Britanniam est <i>trans</i> Atlanticum mare.
Ultra,	beyond;	Ille est <i>ultra</i> puerilem ætatem.

¹ See *vincio*. ² For *occisus est*, see *occido*. Observe that the penult is long in this word, so as to distinguish it from *occido*, which means to sit.

³ *Prope* perhaps is rather an adverb: when it governs an accusative *ad* is understood. However, as it is frequently used alone, it may be classed with the prepositions. ⁴ See *procēdo*.

Usque,	as far as;	Tendēbat usque Romam.
Versus,	towards;	Cæsar duxit exercitum versus Brun-
		dusium.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

Q. How many prepositions govern the Ablative?

A. Thirteen.

EXAMPLES.

A,	} by;	Clodius occisus est a Milōne.
Ab,	} from;	Cicero accēpit maximos ¹ honōres
Abs,		a Romānis.
Absque,	without;	Judex nunquam punisset <i>absque</i> testi-
		moniis.
Coram,	} before, in the	} Habuit orationem <i>coram</i> omnibus.
	} presence of;	
Cum,	with;	Populus Romānus gessit ² bellum
		<i>cum</i> Jugurthā.
De,	of, concerning;	Grotius scripsit ³ librum <i>de</i> jure pa-
		cis et belli.
	from;	Nihil relictum est ⁴ <i>de</i> tanto patrimo-
		nio.
	according to;	Bonus puer faciet omnia <i>de</i> voluntate
		ejus parentum. ⁵
E,	} from;	Aromata veniunt <i>ex</i> Indiā.
Ex,	} according to;	Condemnabatur <i>e</i> sententiā judicis.
Palam,	} before, in the	} Demosthēnes habuit orationem <i>de</i>
	} presence of;	
		Philippo <i>palam</i> Atheniensibus.
Præ,	before;	Antonius tulit ⁶ pugionem <i>præ</i> se.
	in comparison with;	Bonus vir, quamvis pauper, est felix
		<i>præ</i> malo viro; quamvis dives est.
Pro,	for;	Dedi viginti minas <i>pro</i> his libris.
	in favor of;	Cicero fecit verba <i>pro</i> Milōne.
Sine,	without;	Nihil magnum agitur ⁷ <i>sine</i> pericūlo.

¹ See magnus.

² See gerō.

³ See scribo.

⁴ See relinquo.

⁵ See page 18.

⁶ Tulit is the 3d per. sing. perf. ind. of the irregular verb *fero*, and means he carried. See Vocab.

⁷ See ago.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

Q. How many Prepositions govern the *Accusative* and *Ablative*

A. Five.

EXAMPLES.

Clam,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{secretly,} \\ \text{unknown to;} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (\text{acc.}) \text{ Face nihil } \textit{clam} \text{ tuos parentes.} \\ (\text{abl.}) \text{ Cic�ero vidit Fulviam } \textit{clam} \text{ conspirato-} \\ \text{ribus.} \end{array} \right\}$
In,	<i>to;</i>	(acc.) Milites vocabantur <i>in</i> arma.
	<i>into;</i>	(acc.) Milites ruebant <i>in</i> pugnam.
	<i>against;</i>	(acc.) Deus est iratus <i>in</i> males.
	<i>in;</i>	(abl.) Sunt multa templa <i>in</i> Rom�.
	<i>towards;</i>	(abl.) Bonus vir est lenis <i>in</i> hoste.
	<i>within;</i>	(abl.) Vid�bo te <i>in</i> paucis diebus.
Sub,	<i>under;</i>	(acc.) Gr�ci pugn�bant cum Troj�nis <i>sub</i> muros Troj�.
	<i>beneath;</i>	(abl.) Ven�tor manet <i>sub</i> frigido Jove.*
Subter,	<i>beneath;</i>	(acc.) Margarit�e sunt <i>subter</i> mare.
	<i>under;</i>	(abl.) Gr�ci oppugnav�runt muros <i>subter</i> testudine.
Super,	<i>above;</i>	(acc.) Dominus est <i>super</i> servum.
	<i>beyond;</i>	(acc.) Gr�cia est <i>super</i> Italiam.
	<i>upon;</i>	(abl.) Dormias cum me <i>super</i> viridi fronde.
	<i>about;</i>	(abl.) Scripsit ad me <i>super</i> libris.

PREPOSITION GOVERNING THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE.

Q. What Preposition is there which governs the Genitive plural, and the Ablative of both numbers?

A. Tenus.

Q. What is there peculiar to this preposition?

A. It is always *put after* the noun which it governs.

Q. Will you give me some examples of this?

* See Jupiter.

Tenus, with an Ablative.

Tenus, up to, as far as; abdidit* ensem capulo tenus.
face tenus: lacertis tenus.

Tenus, with a Genitive.

Tenus, *down to;* pedum tenus.
as far as; labiōrum tenus.

INTERJECTIONS.

Q. What is an *Interjection*?

A. An Interjection is an indeclinable word, *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind; as Oh! Ah! Eheu, alas! Euge, well done!

CONJUNCTIONS.

Q. What is a *Conjunction*?

A. A Conjunction is an indeclinable word that serves to join words and sentences together; as, *et, and; sed, but; aut, or.*

Sex et sex sunt duodēcim.

Six and six are twelve.

Tu legis Virgilium, *sed* ego lego Ciccrōnem.

You read Virgil, but I read Cicero.

*Abdidit from abdo.

SYNTAX.

Q. WHAT is *Syntax*?

A. *Syntax* is that part of Grammar which relates to the construction of words in sentences, and tells us how to put them rightly together.

Q. From what does it take its name?

A. From two Greek words, *taxis*, (τάξις) which means *the act of placing*, and *sūn*, (σύν) which means *together*: thus *Syntax* is *the act of placing together* words in sentences.

Q. What relations have words to one another?

A. Two: *Concord* and *Government*.

Q. What is *Concord*?

A. *Concord* is when one word agrees with another in some particulars, as in gender, number, person, and case.

Q. What is *Government*?

A. *Government* is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case or mode, in order to govern it.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

Q. What are the *General Principles of Syntax*?

A. 1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.

3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.

4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood, a verbal adjective, or a verb.

5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.

6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition; or is placed before the infinitive.

7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.

8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.

9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

GENERAL RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.

Q. Are the words in the Latin language placed in sentences in the natural English order?

A. They are not, but are arranged in such a manner as to make the sentence sound most harmoniously.

Q. Why does not this manner of collocation cause confusion in the sense?

A. Because the endings of the nouns, and the variations of the adjectives and verbs show their relation, and direct in what manner each word should be taken in.

Q. Give an example?

A. Labor² omnia⁴ improbus¹ vincit³.

labour all things persevering conquers.

If these Latin words be construed in the order in which they stand, they make no sense: but if they be construed as they are numbered, that is, according to the *General Rules of Construction*, a correct English sentence is made, which is, *persevering labour conquers all things.** (Let the pupil repeat the substance of the note.)

*The Latin language, from its admitting so much transposition, possesses a great advantage over the English. Thus we can say *Han-*

Q. What are some of the *General Rules of Construction?*

A. *Rule 1.*

Construe the nominative case first, with the adjective or words that belong to it, if there be any:—then, the verb;—then, the word or words which the verb governs:—lastly, the preposition, if there be any, with the word depending on it.

Rule 2.

A genitive case is usually construed after another noun.

Rule 3.

An infinitive mode, is generally construed after another verb.

Rule 4.

An adjective or participle, if no other word depend on it, must be construed *before* its noun.

nibālem vicit Scipio, or *Scipio vicit Hannibālem*, or *Scipio Hannibālem vicit*, or *vicit Scipio Hannibālem*. The sense is the same, *Scipio conquered Hannibal*. Because, according to the Rules of Construction, in whatever order the words may be placed, we must take in the nominative, *Scipio*, first; then the verb, *vicit*; then the word which the verb governs, which is the accusative *Hannibālem*. But in English we can state the fact only by one order, *Scipio conquered Hannibal*. If we reverse the order and say *Hannibal conquered Scipio*, we state what is not true. If we say *Scipio Hannibal conquered*, or *Hannibal Scipio conquered*, we state an ambiguous proposition, or write a sentence which has no meaning. The chief reason why the Latin admits of this transposition, is the changes which nouns undergo in their different cases. In Latin the nominative of a verb would be altered if made the object of it, as, nom. *Hannibal*, acc. *Hannibālem*. But in English it would remain the same; as when we say *Hannibal conquered Scipio*, *Hannibal* is the nominative; should we say *Scipio conquered Hannibal*, *Hannibal* would be the object of the verb, but would not be changed in its form,

Rule 5.

If an adjective or participle govern a word *after* it, it must be construed after its noun.

Rule 6.

In an ablative absolute, construe the noun *before* the adjective or participle which agrees with it.

Rule 7.

An adverb is not to be construed with a noun, but rather with a verb, or an adjective, or a participle.

Rule 8.

After a preposition constantly look for an accusative or ablative case.

Rule 9.

The word governed must generally be construed *immediately* after the word which governs it.

CONCORD.

Q. What words agree together in sentences?

A. 1. A noun with another noun. 2. An adjective with a noun. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. *Agreement of one noun with another.*

RULE I. Nouns signifying the same thing, agree in case.

Examples.

Cicero orator.

Cato, vir fortis.

Urbs Athenæ.

Deus, auctor omnium.¹

¹ *Omnium* is an adjective in the genitive plural, and means *of all*, and agrees with *negotiorum* understood. As it has no noun here with which it agrees, it means *of all things*.

Urbis Athenārum.

Cicerōni oratōri.

Cæsar imperātor.

Cæsārem imperatōrem.

Philosōphi, magistri virtūtis.

2. *Agreement of Adjectives with Nouns.*

RULE II. Adjectives, Pronouns, and Participles, agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

Latin Examples to be translated into English.

Vir bonus.

Filias caras.

Virōrum bonōrum.

Mater benigna.

Viris bonis.

Spes ultīma.

Puer studiōsus.

Legis divīnæ.

Puēro studiōso.

Tonitru terribīle.

Puēri studiōsi.

Nomīna propria.

Filia cara.

Æstatibus calidis.

Filiam caram.

English Examples to be rendered into Latin.

[*Note.* In these examples all the Latin words that are necessary will be placed opposite to the English sentence, and in the order in which they must be written. The nominatives of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and the first person singular of the indicative mode present tense of verbs, will be given. The scholar must then look at the general vocabulary, to see how the nouns and adjectives are declined, and the verbs conjugated, and put them in the respective places which the Rule requires, and the sense of the English sentence demands.]

In a fertile field.

Ager fertilis.

Of learned men.

Vir doctus.

On slippery ice.

Glacies lubricus.

Divine laws, (nom.)	Lex divīnus.
The bright sun, (acc.)	Sol clarus.
A careful husbandman, (acc.)	Agricolā provīdus.
With a faithful friend.	Amīcus fidēlis.
Of a swift horse.	Equus celer.
To an ancient king.	Rex antīquus.
Fair women, (nom.)	Fœmīna pulcher.

3. *Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.*

RULE III. A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person.

Latin Examples.

Ventus spirat.	Ego vidēbo.
Luna lucet.	Veni, vidi, vici. ¹
Ignis urit.	Puēri scribanto.
Aves volant.	Fulgēbat luna.
Domīnus jubet.	Surge.—Legito.
Sol occīdit.	Lepōres cucurrissent.
Milītes vulnerantur.	Venient juvēnes.
Servus paret.	Disce aut discēde.
Canis custōdit.	Sit lux, et lux fuit.
Bonus homo amātur.	Vox audītur.
Sol splendet.	Puēri docentor.
Puēri eradiuntur.	Hostes victi erant.
Milītes pugnābant.	Tempōra mutantur.
Troja fuit. ²	Domus ædificabītur.
Equus currīto.	Caput tegerētur.
Crimīna puniantur.	Panis emerētur.
Gemma reperiātur.	Hostes capti essent.

¹ For vici see *vinco*.

² *Fuit* comes from *sum*.

English Examples.

Our master comes,	Noster magister venio.
The good boy learns,	Bonus puer disco.
The body is mortal,	Corpus mortalis sum.
Death is certain,	Mors certus sum.
Life is uncertain,	Vita incertus sum.
The earth is round,	Terra sum rotundus.
The stars are bright,	Stella sum clarus.
Time flies,	Tempus fugio.
I was weeping,	Fleo.
The king will conquer,	Rex vinco.
May fortune favour,	Fortuna faveo.
Good boys will be praised,	Bonus puer laudo.
The oars are broken,	Remus frango.
The soldiers will be killed,	Miles interficio.
Let kings be honoured,	Rex honoro.

Accusative before the Infinitive.

RULE IV. The infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

Gaudeo te¹ valere,

I am glad that you are well.

Virgilius jussérat² sua carmina cremari,

Virgil ordered that his poems should be burnt.

Latin Examples.

Volo te venisse. Scio Petrum flere.

Amor jussit me scribere.

¹ To the noun before the infinitive, must always be prefixed the English particle *that*.

² Jussérat from jubeo.

Ferunt¹ Anaxagōram nunquam risisse.²
Scio Regem regnāre. **Scis** me amāre verum.³
Sepulchrum⁴ Cyri aperiri Alexander jussit.
Audivimus Epaminondam esse. modestum, prudentem,
 elementem, patientemque.⁵
Virgilius dicit labōrem vincēre omnia.
Scimus solem esse lucem mundi.
Auctōres dicunt Helēnam esse causam belli Trojāni.

English Examples.

I hear that you are ill, Audio tu aegrotō.
 The messenger relates that Nuntius narro praelium pug-
 a battle has been fought, no, et hostis vinco.
 and that the enemies have
 been defeated.
 I confess that I have sinned. Confiteor ego pecco.
 We say that death will come. Dico mors venio.
 Do you see that the sun Video sol luceo?
 shines?
 Horace says that anger is a Horatius dico ira sum brevis
 short madness. furor.
 I am glad that thou hast re- Gaudeo tu redeo.
 turned.

¹ *Ferunt* comes from the irregular verb *fero*; it is found in the indicative mode, present tense, third person plural, and means *they say*.

² *Risisse* from *rideo*.

³ *Verum* is in the accusative by rule 18th.

⁴ See the first rule of construction.

⁵ *Que* is a conjunction, which is often added to the end of the word which it connects.

The same Case after a Verb as before it.

RULE. V. Any Verb may have the same Case after it as before it, *when both words refer to the same thing.*

Latin Examples.

Ego sum discipulus. Illa incēdit regina.
 Tu vocāris Ioannes. Scio vos esse discipulos.
 Anima est immortalis. Vis consuetudinis est magna.
 Magni principes existimantur felicissimi, paupēres existimantur miserrimi.
 Scio illum habēri¹ sapientem.
 Dolor non est maximum² malum.
 Usus est optimus³ magister.
 Cicero fuit clarus⁴ orator.
 Delector dici bonus et prudens vir.
 Deus est spiritus. Virtus est pretiosa gemma.

English Examples.

Studious boys will be learn- Studiōsus puer sum doctus vir.
 ed men.
 Justice is a most excellent⁵ Justitia sum præstans virtus.
 virtue.
 America is called the new America voco novus mundus.
 world.

¹ Illum habēri, *that he is esteemed.* Habēri from habeo.

² Maximum, superlative degree, from magnus.

³ Optimus, superlative, from bonus.

⁴ Clarus here means famous.

⁵ Most excellent is of the superlative degree: præstans, *excellent*; præstantior, *more excellent*; præstantissimus, *most excellent*. This word must be præstantissima, in the feminine gender, to agree with virtus, virtue, which is feminine.

A true friend is a great treasure. Amicus verus thesaurus sum magnus.

Achilles was a Grecian general. Achilles sum Græcus dux.

Hector was a Trojan general. Hector sum Trojānus dux.

Croesus was a rich man, but Croesus sum dives, sed Solon

Solon was a wise man. sum fortis vir.

Pompey was named "the great." Pompeius voco magnus.

GOVERNMENT.

I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

RULE VI. One Noun governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Noun signifies a different thing from the former.*)

Latin Examples.

Amor Dei.

Fons aquæ.

Domus Cæsaris.

Ratio Hominis.

Lex Naturæ.

Juba leonis.

Virtus est perfectio rationis. Natura est mater omnium.

Sol est lux mundi.

Juno Jovis conjux erat.

Magna est vis conscientiæ. Honor est merces virtutis.

Philosophia est mater omnium bonorum artium.

Dei timor est sapientiæ principium.

Neptūnus est numen aquarum.

Multitudo morborum est infinita.

Varietas linguarum est magna.

Justitia est regina omnium virtutum.

English Examples.

The wonders of the world *Miraculum mundus sum sep-*
are seven: *tem.*

1. The Pyramids of Egypt, *Pyramis Egyptus.*
2. The Tower of Pharos, *Turris Pharos.*
3. The Walls of Babylon, *Murus Babylon.*
4. The Temple of Diana, *Templum Diāna.*
5. The Sepulchre of Mausō- *Sepulchrum Mausōlus.*
lus,
6. The Colossus of Rhodes, *Colossus Rhodus.*
7. The Statue of Olympian *Statua Jupiter Olympius.*
Jupiter,

Piety is the foundation of all *Pietas sum omnis virtus fun-*
the virtues. *damentum.*

Anger is the beginning of *Ira sum dementia initium.*
madness.

Envy is the attendant of *Invidia sum comes virtus.*
virtue.

Sleep is the image of death. *Somnus sum mors imago.*

The event of war is uncer- *Eventus bellum sum incertus.*
tain.

Helen was the cause of the *Helēna causa sum bellum*
Trojan war. *Trojānus.*

RULE VII. But if the latter Noun have an
Adjective of description joined with it, it may
be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir *summæ* *prudentiæ, Gen. or,*
 summā *prudentiā, Abl.*

a man of the greatest prudence.

Latin Examples.

Vir summæ prudentiæ. Puer probâ indôle.
 Consul parvô et pravo animo.
 Cimon Atheniensis fuit vir summâ liberalitâte.
 Epaminondas fuit dux incredibilî virtûte.
 Amo puërum ingenii præclâri.
 Cicëro fuit vir miti ingenio.
 Cato vir magnâ auctoritâte.
 Diogènes fuit acerbâ naturâ.
 Magister facîle docet puëros ingeniis acûtis.
 Gallus quidam, eximiâ corpôris magnitudîne.

English Examples.

A man of no experience in war.	Vir nullum stipendium ¹ bellum.
A woman of high birth.	Mulier magnus ortus.
Athens was a city of great splendour.	Athensæ sum urbs magnus splendor.
He was a boy of a studious disposition.	Ille sum puer studiösus indôles.
She was a girl of great modesty.	Ille sum puella eximius modestia.
Cicero was an orator of consummate eloquence.	Cicëro sum orâtor præclârus eloquentia.
Hannibal was a general of wonderful courage.	Hannibal sum imperâtor virtus admirabilis.
Fabius was a general of great prudence.	Fabius sum dux magnus prudentia.

¹ *Experience in war* may be rendered by the genitive of the noun *stipendium*, 2d declension, neuter; it means literally *soldiers' wages*; for a man who had received no *soldier's pay*, was said to have had no *experience in war*.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

RULE VIII. An Adjective in the neuter gender, without a Noun with which it agrees, governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ,
much of money, or much money.
 Plus eloquentiæ,
more of eloquence, or more eloquence.

Latin Examples.

Habeo tantum otii. Assequēbar tantum boni.
 Est multum mali in exemplo.
 Est multum mali in discordiâ.
 Narrābo cūm habeo aliquid novi.
 Quid consilii capies?
 Decrēvit quondam Sēnatus, ut Lucius Opīmius vidēret, ne
 quid respūblica detrimenti capēret.
 Gloria habet plus molestiæ quam voluptātis.
 Qui¹ habet paulūlum pecuniæ, habet etiam paulūlum fidei.

English Examples.

What is the news? Quis novus (*gen. sing.*) sum?
 He has no sincerity: (*no-thing of sincerity.*) Ille habeo nullus sincērus.
 How much money have you? Quantus pecuniā habeo?
 (*how much of money.*)
 There is very great good² in Sum multus bonus in amicitia.
 friendship.

¹ Qui to be rendered by *he, who.*

² Very great good, *plurimum boni.*

He has very little¹ courage, Ille habeo parvus fortitudo,
but very much honesty. sed multus probitas.

Where there is most study Ubi sum multus studium, ibi
there is least noise. sum parvus clamor.

RULE IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*,
are followed by the ablative; as,

Est opus pecuniâ,
there is need of money.

Latin Examples.

Est usus viribus. Opus est monitore.
Opus est magistratibus. Nihil opus est oratione longa.
Clamas, cum opus est tacito.²
Si vis esse doctus, opus est diligentia.

English Examples.

There is need of brevity. Est brevitatis opus.
There is need of thy authority. Opus sum tui auctoritatis.
There is need of your attention and prudence. Opus sum vestre attentio et prudentia.
There is no occasion for disputes. Nihil usus sum liti.
There is no occasion for words. Nihil opus sum verbo.
In trouble there is need of the counsels of a friend. In dolor opus sum amici consilium.

¹ Very little to be rendered by the superlative.

² *Tacito*, an adjective used for a noun, and means *silence*.

II. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

RULE X. Verbal Adjectives, or such as imply an operation of the mind, require the genitive; as,

Avidus gloriæ,
desirous of glory.

Latin Examples.

Bonus¹ est ignārus fraudis. Scipio fuit expertus belli.²

Miles Romānus fuit patiens³ algōris et famis.

Ejus mens est conscia recti.⁴

Avārus est studiōsus pecuniæ.

Illa est laudis avida.

Bonus est memor beneficiōrum.

Cæsar fuit cupidus triumphī.

Posteritas nunquam erit immemor hujus rei.

Est natūra hominū novitātis avida.

Animus, futuri anxius, calamitosus est.

Tempus edax rerum.

English Examples.

The mind of men is ignorant Nescius mens homo fatum.
of fate.

I am not unmindful of your Non sum tuus mandatum im-
commands. memor,

¹ Vir is here understood. Translate bonus, a good man.

² Belli literally means of war, but in connexion with the adjective expertus, we should say, according to our English idiom, in war.

³ Patiens, patient of, that is, able to bear.

⁴ Recti, an adjective, used for a noun, and means of right, that is, of rectitude.

Cæsar was skilled¹ in many Cæsar doctus sum multus res.
things.

A soldier experienced in Miles bellum expertus.
war.

The mind is capable of every virtue. Mens omnis virtus sum capax.
ry virtue.

Many are more desirous of Multus sum dispūto² quam
disputing than of the truth. veritas avidus.

Live mindful of old age and Vivo memor senectus et mors.
death.

Cræsus was most greedy of Aurum avidus Cræsus sum.
gold.

RULE XI. Partitives,³ comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

Optimus omnium,
the best of all.

Unus nostrum,
one of us.

Latin Examples.

Quis mortalium?

Multæ arborum.

Aliquis philosophorum.

Una musarum.

Senior fratrum.

Quis nostrum.

Octāvus sapientum.

¹ In many things must be rendered by the *genitive*, in connexion with the adjective skilful.

² Use the *genitive* of the gerund. See Rule 32, Obs. 2d.

³ Words are called *partitives* when they mean *part* of any number: thus, *aliquis* is a *partitive*, because it means *some one*: as, *aliquis philosophorum*, *some one of the philosophers*, that is *some part* of that class of men. *Comparatives* and *superlatives* are adjectives of the comparative and superlative-degrees. *Interrogatives* ask a question. *Numerals* define some number.

Cicero fuit doctissimus Romanorum.

Aristoteles et Plato omnium Græcorum fuerunt doctissimi.

Pavo est formosissima omnium avium.

Stultissima animalium sunt lanata.

Beneficiorum maxima sunt ea quæ a parentibus accipimus.

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.

English Examples.

Calumny is the most baneful of all things. Omnis res sum nocens calumnia.

Plato was the most learned of the Grecian philosophers. Plato philosophus Græcus sum doctus.

The Amazon is the greatest of all rivers. Amazon omnis flumen sum magnus.

Death is the end of all things.¹ Mors sum omnis finis.

Which of you were here yesterday? Quis tu hic herè sum?

He is the elder of the brothers. Ille sum frater senex.

The lion is the bravest of animals. Leo sum animal fortis.

The first of the Roman kings was Romulus. Prior rex Romanus sum Romulus.

Demosthenes was the most distinguished of the Grecian orators. Græcus orator præstans sum Demosthenes.

¹ Of all things, to be rendered by *omnium* only: the word *things* is seldom expressed in Latin, but the adjective is put in the neuter gender, and agrees with a noun understood.

2. *Adjectives govern the Dative.*

RULE XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the Dative; or, any Adjective may govern the Dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English; as,

Utilis bello,	Amicus omnibus,
<i>useful for war.</i>	<i>friendly to all.</i>

Latin Examples.

Utilis bello.	Perniciōsus reipublicæ.
Similis patri.	Nil mortalibus arduum est.
Niger est color contrarius albo.	Ea res vobis utilis est.
Quis amior quam frater fratri?	
Nemo fuit reipublicæ perniciosior.	
Tempus vobis est opportunissimum.	
Gallia est contigua Hispaniæ.	
Ptolemæus tam ridiculus Românis,	quam cruentus civibus
fuit.	
Gens Trojana fuit Junoni inimica.	
Catilina fuit omnibus bonis invidus.	

English Examples.

A good boy is kind to animals.	Bonus puer animalium lenis.
He was grateful to his patron.	Ille summi patronus gratus.
Spain is next to Portugal.	Hispania Lusitaniæ propinqua.

¹ *His* is rendered in Latin by *ejus*, of him; the genitive of the adjective pronoun *is, ea, id*, he, she, it; see page 44.

Death is like sleep. *Mors somno similis sum.*
 The stars are convenient to *Stella sum nauta commodus.*
 mariners.

Death is common to all. *Mors omnis communis sum.*
 A good man is merciful to *Bonus is inimicus sum mitis.*
 his enemies.

Nothing is difficult to a brave. *Nihil fortis sum difficilis.*
 man.

A rose is often next to a *Urtica propior saepe rosa est.*
 thorn.

3. *Adjectives governing the Ablative.*

RULE XIII. These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *fretus*; also *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honore, Contentus parvo, Ortus regibus,
worthy of honour. content with little. descended from kings.

Latin Examples.

Cicero fuit dignus honore.

Ille dives¹ qui contentus est parvo.

Ille summo magistratu præditus fuit.

Homerus fuit, captus² oculis.

Milites, suis viribus freti, vicērunt.

Cæsar negotiis amicorum intentus fuit.

Mecenas fuit editus regibus.

Parvo contenta natura est.

¹ *Est* is understood.

² *Captus* is the perfect passive participle of *capio*, and means *taken*; here it means *deprived of*.

Achilles¹ fuit natus Thetide.²

Romulus³ fuit satus divinâ stirpe.

Hic puer est dignus laude.

English Examples.

Learn⁴ to be content with Disca sum parvus contentus.
little.

How happens it,⁵ that no one Quis fio, ut nemo is sors vivo
lives⁶ contented with his contentus.
lot?

Those only are happy who Qui virtus præditus sum, so-
are endowed with virtue. lus beatus.

Catiline⁷ was descended Catilina nobilis stirps ortus
from a noble family. sum.

Do nothing unworthy of a Facio nihil vir indignus.
man.

Relying on his own strength, Fretus suus vis, vinco.
he conquered.

He who is content with his Qui suus (*plur.*) contentus
own is truly the most opu- sum, is verè dives.
lent.

¹ Achilles was one of the Grecian generals who went to the Trojan war. He was killed with an arrow, by Paris.

² Thetide from Thetis, who was one of the sea deities.

³ Romulus was the founder of Rome, 753 years before Christ.

⁴ Learn is in the imperative mode—put the Latin in the 2d person singular.

⁵ How happens it, is a phrase to be rendered by quâ fit; quâ is an adverb, for the ablative quo, by what; modo, manner, being understood: quo modo, in what manner, or by what means. Fit is from the irregular verb fio, to be done, to happen; indicative mode, present tense, 3d person singular; fio, fis, fit; plural, fimus, fitis, fiunt.

⁶ The conjunction ut requires that vivo should be put in the subjunctive mode.

⁷ Catiline was an infamous Roman who conspired with others to destroy his country.

He who is kind to the poor *Qui pauper benevölus*, is dignus sum honor.
deserves praise.

4. *Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.*

RULE XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want, govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Omnia sunt plena Dei,
all things are full of God.
Ille est inops virtüte, or virtütis,
he is void of virtue.

Latin Examples.

Plenus iræ. *Inops ratiöne.*
Ille est abundans divitiis. *Omnia Dei sunt plena.*
Nemo est vacuus molestiä.
Decem naves fuērunt frumento onustæ.
Diogenes fuit sapientiä quàm pecuniä locupletior.
*Terra est ferax Cerëris.*¹
Quamquam pauper argenti et auri, multum honorätus est.
Solitudo, et vita sine amicis, insidiarum et metüs plena est.

English Examples.

Italy was then full of Gre- *Italia tunc ars et disciplina*
cian arts and discipline. *Græcus sum plenus.*
Strength, without counsel, is *Vis, consilium expers, nihil*
nothing. *sum.*
Although destitute of the *Etsi vita solatium inops, sum*
comforts of life, he was *felix.*
happy.
Brutes are without reason. *Bestia ratio sum expers.*

¹ Ceres was the goddess of corn and tillage, and is here put for corn itself, by a figure of speech called *metonymy*.

I see that you will be¹ free. Video tu fore pericūlum om-
from all danger. nis expers.

The harbour is very full of ships. Portus navis plenus sum.

He was laden with the spoils of the East. Ille Oriens spoliū suū onus-
tus.

III. THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

1. VERBS GOVERNING ONE CASE ONLY.

1. *Verbs which govern the Genitive.*

RULE XV. The verb *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

Est regis,

it is of the king, or, it is the king's; that is,

it is the property of the king.

Latin Examples.

Est² fortis animi non perturbāri in rebus aspēris.³

Est insipientis non velle⁴ discere.

Hic hortus est patris.

¹ That you will be; use the accusative before the infinitive fore, which means, to be hereafter.

² Est is here used impersonally, or without any nominative. But strictly speaking, the latter clause of the sentence, non perturbāri in rebus aspēris, is the nominative. For the nominative is always the answer to the question, what? So here the question is, what is the part of a brave mind? and the answer, non perturbāri in rebus aspēris, not to be troubled in adversity, is the nominative to est.

³ In rebus aspēris, literally means in rough or severe affairs, in hardships, or elegantly, in adversity.

⁴ Velle is the infinitive of the irregular verb volo, infinitive velle, perfect volui, to be willing, or to wish.

Est militum parere suo duci.¹

Hominis est errare. Hi libri sunt mei sobrini.

Temeritas est florentis ætatis,² prudentia³ senectutis.

Amici est adjuyāre ejus amicum.

Est nullus, nisi insipientis in errore perseverare.

Est oratoris apte, distincte, ornatēque dicere.

English Examples.

This house is my father's, Hic domus sum pater meus;
but that orchard is a neighbour's. sed iste pomarium sum vicinus.

The books are now my brother's. Liber sum meus frater.

To contemn riches⁴ is the part of a great mind. Divitiæ contemno sum magnus animus.

It is the part of a foolish boy to neglect his studies.⁵ Sum stultus puer studium negligo.

It is the part of a master to teach. Sum magister doceo.

It is the duty of him to speak, Is loquor sum, sed ille audio.
but of them to hear.

RULE XVI. *Misereor, miseresco, and satāgo* govern the genitive; as,

Miserere tuorum civium;

Pity your countrymen.

¹ Duci from *dux*, in the dative, and governed by *parere*, by observation 5th, under rule 17th.

² Florentis ætatis, literally, *of flourishing age*; elegantly, *of youth*.

³ Est is here understood.

⁴ Put the Latin of *riches* in the accusative case, by rule 18th.

⁵ Put the Latin of *studies* also in the accusative.

Latin Examples.

Satāgit suārum rerum.

Miserēre labōrum¹ tantōrum.

Miserescīte regis. Est boni viri, paup̄erum miserēre.

Miserēre domūs labentis.²

Irārum et molestiārum muliebrium Xantippe satagēbat.

English Examples.

I pity his distress for food.³ Misereor is esuria.

Pity my brother. Misereor frater.

Death pities neither rich nor poor. Mors nec dives nec pauper miserescō.

He who is always busy in his studies, will be learned. Qui studium suus satāgo, sum doctus.

2. *Verbs governing the Dative.*

RULE XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs **TO** or **FOR** after it in English; as,

Finis venit imperio,
an end has come to the empire.

Latin Examples.

Anīmus⁴ redit hostībus. Mala eveniunt bonis.⁵

Non nobis solum nati sumus. Sol lucet etiam scelerātis.

¹ Labōrum here means *hardships*.

² Labentis is the present participle of the deponent verb *labor*.

³ *Distress for food, esuria*, noun, fem. 1st declension.

⁴ *Anīmus* here means *courage*.

⁵ When the adjective is thus used without a substantive expressed, *homo*, or *negotium*, is generally understood; as in this case *mala* means *evils*, that is, *mala negotia, evil things*; *bonis*, *to good*, that is, *bonis hominībus, to good men*.

3 4 1 2
 Hæret latēri lethālis arundo.
 Tu ne cede malis, sed contra audentior ito.
 Natūra animalibus varia tegumenta tribuit.
 Homīni soli avaritia data est.

English Examples.

Fortune is prejudicial to the mind. Fortūna officio mens.

To give way to the time is the part of a wise man. Tempus cedo sapiens sum.

A fleet of seventy ships was given to Miltiades. Classis septuaginta navium
 Miltiades dedit. (*perf. pass.*)

Praise is due to virtue. Laus virtus debeo.

[The dative, however, cannot always be rendered by the signs TO and FOR. Under this rule, therefore, it will be necessary to give, in a few observations, such verbs as cannot be followed by these signs.]

Observation First. SUM and its compounds govern the dative; (except *possum*,) as,

Præfuit exercitui, Adfuit precibus.
 he commanded the army. he was present at prayers.

Latin Examples.

Adero¹ tuis rebus difficillimis.

Cicero præfuit toti provincie.

Nec sibi nec alteri prosunt.

Nostro sermōni² interfuit.

Pudor non obfuit orationi.

¹ *Adero* from *adsum*.

² *Sermōni* here means *conversation*.

Dum aliquid virium¹ tibi sup̄erest.
 Creāti sunt decem prætōres, qui exercitui præessent.

English Examples.

In this man there was much Hic homo (*dat.*) multum² va-
 nity. nitas (*gen.*) insum.

Brutus commanded the fleet. Brutus classis præsum.

Cicero was not present at Cicero Pharsalia pugna non
 the battle of Pharsalia. adsum.

Observation Second. EST taken for *Habeo*, to have,
 governs the dative of a person; as,

Liber est mihi,

a book is to me, that is, *I have a book.*

Dico libros esse mihi,

I say that books are to me, that is, I say that I have books.

Latin Examples.

Est mihi pater. Sunt nobis mitia pomæ.

Magna vis est leōni. Est mihi nomen Alexandri.

Antiquissimis hominibus specus erant pro domibus.

Sed Macedonibus assidua certamina cum Thracibus et
 Illyriis fuere.

English Examples.

I have a good knife. Bonus culter ego sum.

I have sweet verses. Sum ego dulcis carmen.

The hare has great swiftness. Magnus sum velocitas lepus.

The Romans had many bat- Romanus cum Carthagenien-
 tles with the Carthageni- sis multus certamen sum.
 ans.

¹ Virium from vis; governed by aliquid, by rule 8th.

² See Rule 8th.

Observation Third. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE, govern the dative.

Latin Examples.

Satisfecit mihi per literas. Dii tibi benefaciant.¹

Maledixit mihi sine² ullâ causâ.

Tuis amicis malefacis.

Pulchrum est benefacere reipublicæ.

Tempus est ludere cum seriis rebus satisfecerimus.

English Examples.

Do evil to no one. Nemō malefacio.

It is delightful to serve your friends. Gratus sum benefacio amicis.

He discharged his duty. Is (gen.) officium satisfacio.

Observation Fourth. Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, AD, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, PRÆ, POST, SUB, and SUPER, govern the dative.

Latin Examples.

Annuē³ audacibus cœptis.

Huc vestris oris pauci adnavimus.

Antecellit omnibus in cursu.

Puer gestit antecellere paribus.

Mors imminet omnibus.

¹ Observe to give to *benefaciant* the sign of the subjunctive mode, *may*, and put it before the English of *Dii*; as, *may the Gods*, &c.

² See the prepositions which govern the ablative.

³ *Annuē*, compounded of *ad* and *nuo*. In almost every case when the preposition is compounded with a verb, the last consonant of the preposition is changed into the consonant with which the verb begins; as, *imminet* for *inminet*; *annuē* for *adnuē*; *officio* for *obficio*; this change is made to make the enunciation easier.

Nox praelio intervēnit.

Omnes occubuērunt morti.

Ego meis majoribus¹ praeluxi.

Vir bonus succurrit misēris.

Supervénit timidis juvenibus.

Nemo enim alteri imperium volens concēdit.

English Examples.

Man excels all other ani- Homo omnis cæter animal an-
mals. -tecēdo.

Mars presides over arms. Mars arma præsideo.

During the conspiracy of Ca- In Catilina conjuratio mag-
tiline, great danger, im- nus periculum Cicero im-
pended over Cicero. pendeo.

Ariovistus interdicted the Ariovistus omnis Gallia (abl.)
Romans from all Gaul. Romānus interdīco.

Cæsar resolved to forbear Cæsar prælium supersedeo
fighting. (inf.) statuo.

Observation Fifth. Verbs govern the dative which signify to *profit* or *hurt*; to *favour* or *assist*; to *command* and *obey*; to *serve* and *resist*; to *threaten*, and to be *angry*; to *trust*.

Latin Examples.

Prospexit ejus salūti. Rogo ut faveās mihi.

Nihil officiāt² frugibus. Mihi minabitur.

Bonus ejus amīcis succurret. Fīdit narratiōni.

Socrates⁹ imperāvit cupiditatibus.

Ille mihi succensuit sine causa.

¹ *Majoribus* here means *ancestors*: those who have gone *before* us.

² See note 3, on the preceding page. This is the subjunctive in the sense of the imperative. Use, therefore, the sign *let*.

³ Socrates was a celebrated Grecian philosopher, and was unjustly put to death by the Athenians.

Multi Romanōrum Catilinæ inceptis favēbant.
 Helōtes¹ Spartānis famulāti sunt.
 Dīi hominībus succensuērunt. Rura mihi placent.
 Misēris succurrere disce.

English Examples.

No man can serve virtue and Voluptas simul et virtus nemo
 pleasure at the same time. servio possum.

I do not envy the fortune of Non ullus fortuna invideo.
 any one.

The shades hurt the corn. Umbra fruges noceo.

He displeased me the least. Ego minime ille displiceo.

Whoever spares the bad Ille bonus noceo qui malus
 hurts the good. parco.

Confide in virtue, but dis- Confido virtus, sed diffido
 trust vice. vitium.

A good boy will obey his pa- Bonus puer is parens pareo.
 rents.

It is the part of a master to Est magister is servus impēro,
 command his servant, but sed servus magister servio.
 of a servant to obey his
 master.

3. *Verbs governing the Accusative.*

RULE XVIII. An active Verb, or a Verb
 signifying actively, governs the accusative; as,

Ama Deum,
 love God.

¹ The Helots were a people whom the Spartans held in slavery, and treated with great cruelty.

Latin Examples.

Beneficia parant amicos. Deus mundum creāvit.
 Romulus Romam fundāvit. Virtus largitur tranquillitatem.
 Cæsar Pompeium vicit. Labor omnia vincit.
 Omnes amant aurum. Honor artes alit.
 Scipio delēvit Carthaginem.
 Sol diem,¹ sed luna noctem regit.
 Mors subita Achillem fortem exstinxit.
 Doctrina vitam suāvem efficit.
 Tuam diligentiam omnes admirantur.
 Romāni omnes gentes vicērunt.

English Examples.

Alexander² vanquished Da- Alexander Darius vinco.
 rius.
 Hannibal³ conquered Italy. Hannibal Italia vinco.
 Fortune favours the brave. Audax fortuna juvo.
 One death awaits all men. Unus mors omnis maneo.
 Egypt produces crocodiles. Ægyptus crocodilus gigno.
 A wise son maketh a glad Filius sapiens lætus pater fa-
 father. cio.
 All nations acknowledge a Omnis natio Deus agnosco.
 God.
 Despise pleasures. Voluptas contemno.
 The Egyptians worship ani- Ægyptius animal colo.
 mals.
 A good boy loves his book. Bonus puer is liber amo.
 Ninus founded the Assyrian Ninus imperium Assyrius
 empire. fundo.

¹ *Regit* is here understood to govern *diem*.

² Alexander was a renowned Grecian general.

³ Hannibal was the great Carthaginian general who led his victorious armies near the very gates of Rome.

Cyrus founded the Persian Cyrus imperium Persicus fun-
empire.

Romulus founded the Ro- Romulus Romanus imperium
man empire. fendo.

RULE XIX. *Recordor, meminī, reminiscor,*
and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or geni-
tive; as,

Recordor lectionis or lectionem,
I remember the lesson.

Latin Examples.

Vir bonus omnium injuriarum oblivisceretur.

Habes ducem sui oblītum.

Recordor tua consilia et benevolentiam.

Memini tuæ constantiæ.

Reminiscor vetēris incommōdi Romanōrum.

Cæsar solet nihil oblivisci, nisi injurias.

1 3 8 4 5 9 7 6
Ut verba parentis, et vocem Anchisæ magni vultumque
2
recordor.

English Examples.

Remember that time. Reminiscor ille tempus.

I have not forgotten to give Non obliviscor is (dat.) epis-
to him the letters. tola do.

I recollect his countenance. Reminiscor is vultus.

I remember your past kind- Memini tuus præteritus bene-
nesses, and am grateful. ficiū (plur.) et gratus sum.

I remember, nor shall I ever Memini, nec ille nōq obli-
forget that night. viscor.

God himself commands you Tu (acc.) memini (perf. inf.)
to remember death. mori, Deus ipse jubeo.

4. *Verbs governing the Ablative.*

RULE XX. Verbs of *plenty* and *scarceness* for the most part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat divitiis, Caret : omni culpâ,
he abounds in riches. he is free from all fault.

Latin Examples.

Sicilia affluit frumento. Pomis exuberat annus.
 Urbs peste caret. Consilio non eges.
 Majores nostri neque consilii neque audaciæ unquam
 eguere.
 Non tam artis indigent,¹ quàm laboris.
 Hoc bellum indiget celeritatis.

English Examples.

Many bad men² abound in Multus malus aurum et ar-
 gold and silver. gentum abundo.
 He who³ is destitute of vir- Qui virtus careo, omnis (*gen.*)
 tue, wants all things. indigeo.
 The time does not need such Tempus talis auxilium non
 aid. egeo.
 You shall not want my pray- Meus precis non egeo.
 ers.
 One wants a bridle, another⁴ Alter frænum, alter calcar
 a spur. egeo.
 Show that death is free from Ostendo mors (*acc.*) omnis
 all evil. malum careo (*inf.*)

¹ *Indigeo* frequently governs the genitive.

² *Bad men*, to be rendered by *mali*, having *homines* understood.

³ *He who*, to be rendered by *qui*, with *ille* understood.

⁴ *One—another, alter—alter.*

RULE XXI. *Utor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior*, and *vescor*, govern the ablative; as,

Utītur fraude,

he uses deceit.

Abutitur libris,

he abuses books.

Latin Examples.

Ille usus est his verbis.

Utēre tuo iudicio.

Quousque tandem abutēre,¹ Catilīna, nostrā patientiā.

Vitā eternā boni fruuntur.

Vel imperatōre vel milite me utimīni.

Epaminondas fortis militis officio functus est.

Stultus puer libris abutitur.

Dii nec escis aut potionibus vescuntur.

Scythæ lacte et melle vescuntur; lanæ usus iis ignotus est,
sed pellibus ferinis utuntur.

English Examples.

I will discharge the duty of *Interpres munus fungor*.
an interpreter.

A wise man makes use of² *Sapiens ratio utor*.
reason.

A contented man enjoys life. *Contentus vita fruor*.

Do not abuse my patience. *Meus patientia non abutor*.

Cræsus possessed great *Cræsus magnus divitiæ potior*.
wealth.

¹ *Abutēre* is found in the 2d person singular, future tense.

² *Makes use of*—utitur.

2. VERBS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

1. *Verbs governing two Datives.*

RULE XXII. *Sum* used instead of *affĕro*, (which means *to bring*,) governs two datives, the one dative of a person, and the other dative of the thing; as,

Est mihi voluptāti,
it is to me for pleasure, that is, it brings pleasure to me.

Latin Examples.

Est honōri tibi. Uvæ vitibus decōri sunt,
Ego sum curæ tuo negotio. Lupus est exitio pecōri.
Vitis arboribus decōri est. Exitio nautis avidis est mare.
Bonus puer est honōri ejus parentibus.
Amicus amico solamini est.
Cibus illis adversum famem atque sitim, non lubidīni
neque luxuriæ erat.
Multis corpus est voluptati, anima onĕri.

English Examples.

He was an example¹ to many. *Ille multus exemplum sum.*
 He was of great use² to me. *Ille ego usus magnus sum.*
 He commanded them to supply corn, which would be necessary for the war. *Impĕro comparto frumentum, quod usus sum bellum.*
 All the cattle was the plunder of the soldiers. *Pecus omnis miles præda sum.*

¹ *An example, to be put in the dative.*

² *Of great use, that is, for great use; use the dative.*

Let your brother be an ex- Tuus frater tu exemplum sum
ample to you. (subj. pres.)

Knowledge will always bring Scientia tū usus atque volup-
both profit and pleasure to. tas semper sum.
you.

2. Verbs governing the Accusative and Genitive.

RULE XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemn-
ing, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the
accusative of a person with the genitive of a
thing; as,

Arguit me furti,
he accuses me of theft.

Latin Examples.

Meipsum inertiae condemno. Monet me officii.

Illum homicidii absolvunt. Cicero Verrem furti accusavit.

Judex absolvit injuriarum eum.

Morbus debet monere te mortis.

Senatus liberavit regem ejus culpae.

Athenienses Socratem¹ impietatis male accusaverunt.

Romanus Senatus Catilinam pessimorum facinorum con-
demnavit.

English Examples.

He condemns his son-in-law Scelus condemno gener suus.
of wickedness.

The death of a friend warns Mors amicus ego (acc. plur.)
us of our own death. mors noster moneo.

¹ Socrates was one of the greatest philosophers in Greece. Soon after the Athenians had condemned him to death, they became convinced of their error, and, in return, took vengeance upon his accusers.

The judges condemned him *Judex is homicidium con-*
demno.
 of murder.

Adversity¹ reminds men of *Res adversus homo religio ad-*
moneo.
 religion.

Sickness will remind you of *Morbus tu mors admoneo.*
 death.

Accuse no one of a crime *Nemo crimen accūso, prius*
quam is defensio audio.
 until you have heard his
 defence.

RULE XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihili*; as,

Æstimo te magni,²
I value you much.

Latin Examples.

Avārus æstīmat pecuniam magni.

Virtūtem maxīmi duce.

Divitias absque doctrīnā nihīli puta.

Stultus divitias,³ sapiens virtūtem maxīmi æstīmat.

Fortūnam minīmi, honestātem maxīmi pende.

Epicūrus voluptātem magni æstimāvit, sed nulla possessio pluris æstimanda es quā virtus.

Sapiens facit voluptātem minīmi, et æstīmat nullam possessionem pluris quā virtutem.

¹ *Adversity*—*res adversæ, adverse things*; and then of course the verb should be put in the plural.

² There is always some substantive understood in this elliptical or short form of expression; as, *æstimo te magni*, that is,

Æstimo te esse homīnem magni pretii,

I esteem you to be a man of great price or value.

³ *Æstīmat* is understood to the first part of this sentence.

English Examples.

He valued money greatly.¹ Divitiæ magnus æstimō.

Brave men value threats as nothing. Fortis minæ nihil puto.

A wise man values reputation more than riches. Sapiens fama plus quàm divitiæ æstimō.

A fool values money more than learning. Stultus pecunia plus quam doctrīna facio.

A pious man esteems religion of the greatest consequence.² Pius vir religio magnus æstimō.

3. *Verbs governing the Accusative and Dative.*

RULE XXV.³ Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

Compāro Virgilium. Homēro, Eripuit me morti,⁴
I compare Virgil to Homer. he rescued me from death.

Latin Examples.

Suum⁵ cuique tribuītō. Narras fabūlam surdo.⁶
 Legam Lectiōnem tibi. Religio morti timōrem aufert.

¹ Greatly, to be rendered by magni.

² Of the greatest consequence—maxīmi.

³ This rule may be better expressed in more general terms—*Any active verb may govern the accusative and dative, when both the object is expressed, and the person or thing upon which the object is exerted.*

⁴ Verbs which signify to take away have the sign *from* with the dative.

⁵ Negotium, thing, is here understood.

⁶ Homīni is here understood.

Puëro studiōso magister premium donābit.
 Sæpe conferimus parva magnis.
 Ille mihi responsum dedit.
 Hannibal ejus militibus verba fecit præ Cannæ prœlium.
 Vita nihil mortalibus donat sine magnâ operâ.
 Fortūna multis dat nimis, satis nulli.

English Examples.

Take from me this grief.	Eripio ego (<i>dat.</i>) hic dolor.
Show me ¹ your letter.	Vester epistōla ego (<i>dat.</i>) ostendo.
Temperance brings peace to the mind.	Temperantia animus pax fero.
Solon gave laws to the Athenians, Lycurgus to the Spartans, and Numa to the Romans.	Solon Athenienses, Lycurgus Lacedemonii, atque Numa Romani lex do.
Pay me the money.	Pecunia ego solvo.
The laws of Lycurgus bring up youth to labour.	Lycurgus lex adolescens (<i>plur.</i>) labor edūco.
A covetous man acquires riches for others, not for himself.	Avārus alius, non sui divitiæ paro.

4. *Verbs governing two Accusatives.*

RULE XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Poscimus pacem te,
we beg peace of thee.

¹ Show me, that is, show to me.

Latin Examples.

Docuit me grammaticam. Rogo-te hoc beneficium.
 Rogo te hanc veniam. Geographiam pueros docēmus.
 Plato ejus discipulos philosophiam erudiit.
 Columbæ accipitrem rogavērunt, ut eas defendēret.¹
 Is me rogāvit meam sententiam de hâc lege.
 Posce Deos animum fortem et carentem terrōre² mortis.
 Sapiens docēbit filios justitiam, frugalitatem, temperantiam,
 atque fortitudinem.

English Examples.

I instructed you in the liberal arts. Doceo tu liberālis ars.
 Ask of God sound reason, health of mind, and next of body. Deus posco bonus ratio, mens et deinde corpus valetudo.
 All beg peace of you. Omnis pax tu posco.
 Ask pardon of thy father. Rogo pater venia.
 Minerva instructed Telemachus in the laws and precepts of war. Minerva Telemachus erudio lex et præceptum bellum.
 When will you teach me music? Quum ego musica doceo.
 Poverty teaches a man many things. Multus homo paupertas doceo.

¹ *Ut eas defendēret*, is here a whole sentence, put for the accusative of the thing. They asked him—what? why—*ut eas defendēret*.

² *Terrōre* is governed by *carentem* by rule 20th, which see.

5. *Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.*

RULE XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

Onērat nāves auro,
he loads the ships with gold.

Latin Examples.

Magno metu me liberābis. Implēvit mero patēram.
Solvite¹ vestra corda metu. Milītes tegunt capīta galeis.
Nudāvit aciem equestri auxilio.
Me oculis spoliavērunt.
Natūra vestit oculos membrānis tenuissimis.
Somnus nos omnibus sensibus orbat.

English Examples.

They load the altars with Ara multus donum onēro.
many offerings.
He bound Gaul in chains, Vincio catēna Gallia.
He deprived his father of Is (*gen.*) pater vita privo.
life.
Youth clothes our cheeks Juventus gēna flos vestio.
with bloom.
Formerly they crowned vic- Olim corōno victor oliva, et.
tors with olive, and encir- is (*gen. plur.*) tempōra lau-
cled their temples with - rus cingo.
laurel.
This new philosophy de- Hic novus philosophia ego
prives us of rest. quies privo.

¹ *Solvite*, loose, discharge.

Sylla filled the city of Rome Sylla Roma sanguis et cædes
with blood and slaughter. impleo.

Go out of the city, Catiline, Egredior ex urbs, Catilina, et
and free the common- libéro respublica metus.
wealth from fear.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

RULE XXVIII. When a Verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case;¹ as,

By the Active Verb.

Accūsāt me furti,
he accuses me of theft.

Docet me grammaticam,
he teaches me grammar.

Compāro Virgilium Homēro,
I compare Virgil to Homer.

By the Passive Verb.

Accūsor furti,
I am accused of theft.

Doceor grammaticam,
I am taught grammar.

Virgilius comparātur Homēro.
Virgil is compared to Homer.

Latin Examples.

By Rule 23. { Damnātus est ambītus. Milo damnātus est
homicidii.
Absolūtus est majestātis. Monētur ejus
officii.

By Rule 24. Existimātur magni. Aurum habētur maximi.

By Rule 25. { Res nunciātur hostibus. Parva² conferuntur
magnis. Mors recte comparātur somno.
Puella nobis eripitur. Cicēro comparātur
Demosthēni.

¹ The accusative after an active verb, always becomes its nominative, when the verb is changed to the passive form; while the other case is retained.

² Parva, negotia understood, small things.

- By Rule 26. { Is rogātus est ejus sententiam. . Johannes
 { docētur grammaticam.
 By Rule 27. { Navis auro onerātur. . Solvitur catēnis.
 { Opprimitur ære aliēno.¹ Privātus est ejus vitā.

English Examples.

He was accused of this crime, Accūso hic crimen, sed judex
 but acquitted by the votes absolve sententia.
 of his judges.

Virtue is justly esteemed of Virtus justè magnus (*super.*)
 the greatest value. æstimo.

Let not money be compared Divitiæ non fama compāro.
 to reputation. (*pres. sub. pass.*)

The youth is taught Greek. Puer Græcus litēræ doceo.

Cethēgus, having been con- Cethēgus, proditio² condem-
 demned of treason, was no, is vita privo.
 deprived of his life.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

RULE XXIX. An Impersonal Verb governs
 the dative; as,

Expēdit reipublicæ,
it is profitable for the state.

Latin Examples.

Licet nemīni peccāre.³ Accīdit mihi præter⁴ opiniōnem.

¹ Æs originally meant *copper*, and therefore used for *money*: hence *as aliēnum*, which literally means, *another man's copper*, means also *debt*; as when one man is in debt to another, he has *another man's money*.

² To be put in the genitive, by Rule 23d.

³ The infinitive is governed by *licet*, by Rule 30th.

⁴ See Prepositions, page 99.

Conducit salutē vivere e naturā, et nobis expedit ita vivere.

2 3 1 6 5 4
Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rempublicam.¹

Libet mihi expatiari.

Non libet mihi deplorare vitam.

Præstat philosophis tacere, quam loqui.

English Examples.

It is evident to me that God² Constat ego Deus mundus gubernat.
governs the world. berno.

It was manifest to all that Omnis patet is imperium peto.
he aimed at the sovereignty.

It is better to die than to Præstat morior quam in servitute vivere.
live in slavery. vitus vivo.

It appears to me that he is a Videtur ego is malus sum,
bad man. (inf.)

THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

RULE XXX. One Verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

Cupio discere,
I desire to learn.

¹ *Rempublicam*—the accusative before the infinitive *esse*, by Rule 4.

² *That God—Deum*—the accusative before the infinitive of the verb.

Latin Examples.

Non possum¹ dormīre. Omnes volunt vivēre beatē.
 Urbes non possunt nec ædificārī nec frequentārī sine cætu
 homīnum.

Potes dicere nihil verum.

³ ⁴ ² ¹
 Omne negotium effugere cupivit.

¹ ⁴ ⁵ ⁶ ³ ²
 Jam nihil de republicā cogitare statui.

¹ ² ⁵ ⁶ ⁴ ³
 Romæ² elephantes per funes incedere docebantur.

Nemo potest esse beatus sine virtute.

Malum librum laudare non possum.

³ ⁴ ² ¹
 Illecēbras voluptātis vitare debemus.

¹ ⁴ ⁵ ³ ⁶ ²
 Non omnes homines amare pariter possumus.

English Examples.

Learn to live, and learn to die. Disco vivo, et disco morior.

I love to study, because I wish to learn. Amo studeo, quia volo disco.

Who is able to know all things? Qui omnis nosco possum.

¹ Possum is an irregular verb, and is thus varied in the indicative mode, present tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	1. Possum,	<i>I can, or am able,</i>
	2. Potes,	<i>Thou canst, or art able,</i>
	3. Potest,	<i>He can, or is able;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	1. Possūmus,	<i>We can, or are able,</i>
	2. Potestis,	<i>You can, or are able,</i>
	3. Possunt,	<i>They can, or are able.</i>

² Romæ, at Rome, the genitive of place, where; see Rule 47th.

Do you love to walk?	Amo tu ambūlo?
Good men hate to sin.	Bonus odi pecco.
Learn to bear well a great fortune.	Disco bene fero magnus fortuna.
Thespis is said to have invented Tragedy.	Thespis dico Tragædia invenio.
Nothing can imitate the skill of nature.	Nihil possum natūra solertia imitor.
Rémember to preserve an equal mind ¹ in difficult circumstances.	Memini in res adversus æqualitatis conservo.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

RULE XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs;² as,

Amans virtutem,
loving virtue.

Latin Examples.

2 4 3 1
Regni rerumque obliti.

Legati venērunt questum³ injurias, et ex fœdère res repetitum.

Nauta, tenens gubernaculum, navim regit.

¹ *An equal mind*, to be rendered by the accusative of *æquanimitas*, equanimity.

² That is, if the verb govern the *accusative*, the participle, gerund, or supine derived from it, governs the *accusative*; if the verb govern the *dative*, the participle governs the *dative*; and so on.

³ *Questum* comes from *queror*.

⁴ *Res*, here means *property*; for the meaning of *ex* see page 100, second definition.

Mors est antepōnenda¹ dedecōri.

Julius Cæsar functus² consulātu, Galliam provinciam sorte obtinuit.

Ille carens³ fraude, ab omnibus amātus est.

Consilium Lacedæmōnem occupandi cepērunt.

Antonius vestem Cæsāris sanguinolentam ostentans, populum adversus conjuratos inflamāvit.

English Examples.

Stretching both his hands to- Tendo duplex manus ad cœ-
wards heaven. lum.

We sent to inquire⁴ of his health. Mitto quæro valetūdo. (*acc.*)

An army pursuing the ene- Exercitus hostis sequor, cum
my, fights with darts. sagitta pugno.

Admonishing me of my duty, Ego officium admoneo, abeo.
he departed.

Loaded with chains he was Catēna onero, (*perf. part.*) in
cast into prison. carcer jacto.

By using deceit he was des- Fraus utor, (*ger. abl.*) con-
pised. temno.

Nor have I any hope of see- Non ego (*dat.*) ullus spes vi-
ing my ancient country, deo (*ger. gen.*) patria antī-
nor my pleasing children, quus, nec dulcis natus, ex-
and my much beloved sire. optātusque parens.

¹ See Rules 25 and 28.

² See Rule 21st.

³ See Rule 20th.

⁴ Let to inquire be translated by the supine.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

RULE XXXII. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; as,

Studendum est mihi,

studying is to me; or, I must study.

Tempus studendi, Aptus studendo,

time of study. fit for studying.

Observation First. The Gerund in *DUM*, of the nominative case, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.¹

Latin Examples.

Etiam post malam messem serendum est.

Omnibus moriendum est.

Semper nobis pugnandum est contra cupiditâtes.

Nobis orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.

Vivendum est mihi rectè.

3 1 2 4 7 8 6 5
Iis vigilandum est, qui gubernaculum patriæ sibi deposcunt.

Videndum est igitur, ut ea liberalitâte utâmur, quæ prosit amicis, et noceat nemini.

English Examples.

I must govern my tongue. Lingua (*dat.*) modëror sum ego.

We must deliberate. Ego (*dat. plur.*) delibëro sum.

We must take care also lest the punishment be greater than the crime. Caveo sum etiam, ne pœna magnus quàm culpa sum. (*sub. pr.*)

¹ This gerund always implies obligation or necessity, and very often the dative is understood; as, *serendum est*, it must be sowed, that is, nobis, by us, or, omnibus, by all.

We should take care that the *Efficio* sum, ut appetitus ratio¹ obedient to reason.

Observation Second. The gerund in *DI*, of the genitive case, is governed by substantives or adjectives.

Latin Examples.

4 3 1 2
Plurimæ sunt illecitæ peccandi.
Artem scribendi Phœnices invenērunt.
Artem acu pingendi² Phryges invenērunt.
Honestissima est contentio beneficiis beneficia vincendi.
Cæsar equitandi³ peritissimus erat.

English Examples.

The lust of power. Domīno cupido.
We should check⁴ that licentiousness of scandalizing. Refūto iste maledico licentia.
Milo had no power of staying. Milo (*dat.*) maneo nullus sum ing. facultas.

Observation Third. The gerund in *DO*, of the dative case, is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness.

Latin Examples.

Charta est utilis scribendo.
Hic exercitus aptus est gerendo bellum.
Cæsar impērat omnes naves aptas pugnando colligi.

¹ See Rule 17, Obs. 5th.

² Pingendi acu, of painting with the needle, that is, of working figures upon cloth.

³ For the government of *equitandi* by *peritissimus*, see Rule 10th.

⁴ We should check, *refutarēmus*.

English Examples.

Seed is useful for sowing. Semen utilis sum sero.
 He is not fit for commanding the army. Ille non sum aptus exercitus
 (dat.) impéro.
 This water is not fit for drinking. Hic aqua non sum aptus bibo.

Observation Fourth. The gerund in *DUM*, of the accusative case, is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*.

Latin Examples.

Promptus ad audiendum. Attentus inter docendum.
 2 3 4 1 7 8 6
 Catōnis erga fratrem benevolentia ad imitandum propo-
 5
 penda est.
 Tempus anni ad gerendum bellum deficit.
 Arbitratus tempus esse aliēnum ad committendum prœlium,
 continuit se suo loco.

English Examples.

He is artful in persuading. Ille astutus ad persuadeo.
 The short time of our existence is long enough to live well. Brevis tempus ætas satis sum
 longus ad benè vivo.

Observation Fifth. The gerund in *DO*, of the ablative case, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *x*, or *in*; or if there be no preposition, it is governed as the ablative of *cause*, *manner*, or *instrument*. See Rule 46.

Latin Examples.

Pœna a peccando absterret. Defessus sum ambulando.

1 4 2 5 3
Simiæ catûlos sæpe complectendo necant.

Amicus semper amicum juvabit consolando.

Plurîmi, in suadendo, audâces; sed in ipso pericûlo timîdi sunt.

English Examples.

Idle persons are soon discouraged from learning. Ignāvus a disco cito deterreo.

It is not my design to spend my life in cultivating land or in hunting. Non meus consilium sum ego vitam ager colo aut venor.

The mind of man is nourished by learning and thinking. Homo mens disco alo et cogito.

Gerunds turned into Participles in dus.

RULE XXXIII. Gerunds governing the accusative, are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

By the Gerund.

1 3 4 2
Petendum est mihi pacem,
seeking is to me peace.

Tempus petendi pacem,
time of seeking peace.

By the Participle.

Pax est petenda mihi,
peace is to be sought by me.

Tempus pacis petendæ,
time of peace to be sought.

Latin Examples.

Cæsar morâtur in his locis causâ¹ parandârum navium.

Non habēbat facultātem² gerendi bellj.

Omnes civitatēs pecuniam dededērunt ad classes ædificandas, exercitusque comparandos.

Imperâtor existimābat octoginta naves esse satis ad transportandas duas legiōnes

1 3 4 6 7 5 8
Barbâri suis,³ quanta prædæ faciendæ facultas⁴ darētur,
9 11 12 10 2
si Romānos castris expulissent demonstravērunt.

English Examples.

You, now, soldiers, have an Nunc, miles, opportunitas ha-
opportunity of trying your- beo virtus probo.
courage.⁵

There was a design of de- Consilium sum urbs deleo, et
stroying the city, and of civis interficio.
murdering the citizens.

That boy is fit for sustaining Hic puer aptus sum labor to-
labour. lero.

All the cities of Greece gave Omnis civitas Græcia, do pe-
money for building a cunia ad classis ædifico.
fleet.

¹ Causâ is put in the ablative, by Rule 46th, which see.

² Facultātem here signifies the means, the resources.

³ Suis agrees with hominibus understood.

⁴ Facultas, in this sentence, means, opportunity.

⁵ Of trying your courage, to be rendered by the genitive of probanda virtus.

⁶ For building, ad ædificandam.

Some men use more care in. Quidam magnus studium utor
 procuring horses than in in equus paro, quam in
 choosing their friends. amicus seligo.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. *The Supine in um.*

RULE XXXIV. The Supine in *um* is put
 after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulātum,
he hath gone to walk.

Latin Examples.

Venimus huc quæsītum oracūla.

³ Me ultro accusātum advenit.

Scitātum oracūla Phœbi mittimus.

Imperātor duxit cohortes prædātum.

Legātos ad Cæsārem mittunt, rogātum auxilium.

Nunc venis irrīsūm domīnum?

Venit orātum opem.

Vos ultum injūrias hortor.

English Examples.

He went to fish. Abeo pisco.

He came to ask pardon of Venio oro venia Cæsar.
 Cæsar.¹

The army was sent to lay Exercitus mitto Romānus ager
 waste the Roman territory. vasto.

¹ *Of Cæsar*, should be rendered by the accusative, according to
 Rule 26th.

They came to my house to Venio ad meus domus ego sa-
salute me. lūto.

They go to destroy all good Omnis bonus perdo eo.
men.

2. The Supine in u.

RULE XXXV. The Supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

Facile dictū,
easy to tell, or to be told.

Latin Examples.

Prodigium est mirabile visu.

Ista lepida sunt memoratu.

Horatius ferè solus lectu dignus.¹

1 3 2 4 6 7 5 8
Nihil² dictu fœdum, visūque, hæc limina tangat, intra
9 10 11
quæ est puer.

Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus.

Sed incredibile est, quantum civitas brevi crevit.

English Examples.

The thing is horrible to re- Res horrendus refêro.
late.

It is wonderful to tell how Mirabilis sum dico quantum
much he accomplished by diligentia (abl.) facio.
his diligence.

¹ Est is to be supplied.

² Nihil is the nominative to tangat, which is in the subjunctive mode, present tense, and is used here, as is often the case, for the imperative mode; as, puer legat, let the boy read, for, puer legito: therefore in construing nihil, say, let nothing.

It is easy to tell that idle- Facilis dico ignavia miseria
ness¹ will produce misery. gigno.

It is difficult to find a true Difficilis sum invenio amicus
friend. verum.

This is lawful to be spoken. Hic fas sum dico.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

1. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

RULE XXXVI. Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs; as,

Benè scribit, Fortiter pugnans.
well he writes. bravely fighting.

Latin Examples.

1 3 2 7 6 5 4
Xantippe, Socrätis uxor, morösa admödum fuisse fertur.

Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto² latent.

4 7 8 6 1 5 2
Diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non po-
3 9 11 10
tuerunt, ac tergä vertērunt.

Natio omnis Gallorum admödum dedita est religionibus.

Biduo post, Ariovistus legatos ad Cæsarem mittit.

English Examples.

Cimon quickly came to the Cimon celeriter ad principä-
greatest eminence. tus pervenio.

He died a few days after. Ille pauci post dies (*abl. plur.*)
morior.

I hoped well, but it happen- Spero bene, sed evēnit multo
ed much otherwise. aliter.

¹ That idleness; accusative before the future infinitive.

² Occulto is here used for a noun, *in secret*; properly speaking, it agrees with *locus* understood; in *occulto loco*, *in a secret place*.

IV. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

RULE XXXVII. Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

Pridiè ejus dièi, Ubique gentium,
the day before that day. in every part of nations, or every
where.

Latin Examples.

Potentiae gloriaeque abundè adeptus est.

Te interea loci¹ cognōvi.

Ejus abstinentiae hoc erit satis testimonii.

Contentio eò vecordiae processit, ut studiis civilibus finem faceret.

Credo inesse in arcà largiter auri et argenti.

Postridie ejus diei mane, milites in expeditionem misit.

English Examples.

He came to such a pitch² of Venio eò arrogantia, ut is insolence, that I com- (dat.) impéro ego desero. manded him to leave me.

A great abundance³ of wealth Affatim divitiae non ego opus is not necessary for us. sum.

We have said words enough,⁴ Dico satis verbum. (enough of words.)

He has enough talk, but little wisdom. Habeo satis loquentia, sed parum sapientia.

He had eloquence enough. Habeo satis eloquentia.

¹ Interea loci, in the mean time.

² To such a pitch, eò.

³ A great abundance, affatim.

⁴ Enough, satis.

RULE XXXVIII. Some derivative Adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

³ Omnium optīmē ² loquītur, ¹
of all best he speaks, or, in the English order,
he speaks best of all.

Latin Examples.

Ille naturæ convenienter¹ vivit.

Jugurtha sæpe obviam eundo periculis, in tantam claritudinem brevi pervenerat, ut Romānis vehementer carus Numantinis maximo terrōri² esset.

Proximē urbi Spartæ Eurōtas fluvius delabitur.

Cicero optīmē³ omnium Romanōrum locutus est.

Castra nostra propius urbi movebantur.

English Examples

Miltiades flourished the Miltiades omnis maxime flo-
 greatest of all. reo.

He staid beyond⁴ expecta- Manco diutius expectatio.
 tion.

What does he say agreeably Quid ratio convenienter dico?
 to reason?

Part of the standards were Partim signum (gen. plur.)
 burnt. uro.

I sent to Athens to meet⁵ Mitto Athenæ (acc.) obviam
 him. is. (dat.)

¹ *Convenienter*; *obviam*, in the next sentence; *proximē*, in the next and *propius*, in the next but one; all govern the dative by the force of their primitives, under Rule 12th; which see.

² For these two datives see Rule 22d.

³ For the primitive of *optīmē* see Rule 11th.

⁴ *Diutius* governs the ablative by Rule 58th.

⁵ To meet, *obviam*.

All in the mean time run to Omnis interea locus, ego obviam concurre.

2. THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. *Prepositions governing the Accusative.*

RULE XXXIX. There are thirty-two prepositions which govern the accusative, or have an accusative after them.

[For examples under this rule see pages 98 and 99.]

2. *Prepositions governing the Ablative.*

RULE XL. There are thirteen prepositions which govern the ablative, or have an ablative case after them.

[For examples under this rule see page 100.]

3. *Prepositions governing the Accusative and Ablative.*

RULE XLI. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative, *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN, when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative. [See page 101.]

RULE XLII. A Preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

Adeāmus scholām,
let us go to school.

Latin Examples.

Urbem¹ magnam accedimus.

Boni puēri scholam adire delectant, et scholā composītē exeunt.

Mali puēri scholā expelluntor.

Catilīna, Cicerōne accusātus, urbe evāsīt.

Igitur Metellus cuncta mōnia² exercītū circumvēnit.

Aliqui vitam silentio transeunt, velūti pecōrā.

At Jugurtha, magnis itinerībūs, Metellum antevēnit.

English Examples.

They thrust the ships from *Detrūdo navis scopūlus.*
the rock.

Cæsar led³ all his cavalry *Cæsar omnis equitātus pons*
over the bridge. *tradūco.*

I am absent both from my *Absum et meus domus et fo-*
house and the forum. *rum.*

He addressed me in these *Hic verbum (abl. plur.) ego*
words. *alloquor.*

¹ *Urbem* is governed by *ad* in the composition of *accedimus*. See note 3, page 129.

² This 42d Rule generally takes place when the preposition can be separated from its verb. So in this line—*venit exercitu circum cuncta mōnia*; where *circum* is separated from *venit*.

³ In English the preposition is generally separated from its verb, and put after it. In this sentence, to follow the Latin manner of speaking, it would be, *Cæsar overled the bridge all his cavalry.*

The fleet is drawn around¹ *Chassis arx circumveho.*
the citadel.

Being expelled from his coun- *Patria expulsus Sicilia (acc.)*
try he went to Sicily. *eo.*

By this way he drew over his *Hic² copia tradūco, et in Ita-*
troops, and came into Italy. *lia (acc.) pervenio.*

3. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

RULE XLIII. The Interjections, *O, heu,* and *proh,* are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

¹ ³ ²
O vir bonus!
O good man!

Latin Examples.

O me perditum! O faciem pulchram!

O meam calamitosam senectutem!

Heu me miserum! quum tuum animum spectavi.

Proh deum atque hominum fidem!

Heu, miserande puer!

English Examples.

What an abandoned and im- *O! scelestus atque audax ho-*
pudent man. *mo! (acc.)*

O my country! O Ilium! O patria! (voc.) O Ilium.

O the detestable meanness O foeditas (acc.) homo flagiti-
of the man. *osus.*

O sacred Jove! what great Pro sanctus Jupiter (voc.)
er action was ever per- *quis magnus res unquam*
formed? *gero.*

¹ Is drawn around, *circumvehitur.*

² Put this in the *abl. sing. fem.* to agree with *via* understood.

RULE XLIV. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative;
as,

Hei mihi! *Væ vobis!*
ah me! *woe to you.*

Latin Examples.

Hei mihi! non possum hoc sine lacrymis commemorare.
Hei mihi, qualis erat!¹ quantum mutatus ab illo Hectore;
qui rediit exuvias² indutus Achillis!
Væ misero mihi!

English Examples.

Alas! whither am I hurried? *Hei ego!* quod rapio?
Woe to me! my son has fallen. *Væ ego!* meus filius in pugna
en in battle. occumbo.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

Q. How many circumstances are there in Latin, expressed in different cases?

A. Five: 1. The *Price of thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner, and Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure and Distance*. 5. *Time*.

1. PRICE.

RULE XLV. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Emi librum duobus assibus,
I bought a book for two shillings.

¹ *Qualis erat!* what was he! that is, how he looked! This refers to Hector, the Trojan general, who was killed by Achilles, and whose body was dragged around the walls of Troy.

² *Exuvias* is governed by the preposition *secundum* understood. It refers to the armour of Achilles which Patroclus, another Grecian general, had worn, whom Hector had killed, and in whose armour he had dressed himself, before he himself was killed by Achilles.

Latin Examples.

Isocrātes orātor unam orātiōnem viginti talentis vendidit.
 Locāvit suam domum centum aureis.
 Multōrum sanguīne ac vulneribus ea Pœnis victoria stetit.¹
 Magno pretio ubique virtus æstimātur.
 Emi librūm duobus assibus.
 Voluptas empta dolore nocet.
 Plurimi auro veneunt honores.

English Examples.

This man sold his country Hic aurum patria vendo.
 for gold.
 Demosthenes taught for a Demosthēnes talentum doceo.
 talent.
 What is not necessary, is Quis non sum necessarius,
 dear at a penny. carus sum denarius.
 He sold his house for a large Vendo is domum grandis pe-
 sum of money. cunia.
 Life is not to be bought at Vita non sum emo² omnis
 every price. pretium.

2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

RULE XLVI. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metū, Fecit suo more,
I am pale for fear. he did it in his own way.

¹ Stetit Pœnis, literally, *stood to the Carthagenians*; as we say of any thing, *it stands us in* so much, when it costs us so much.

² Use the future pass. part. fem.

Latin Examples.

Percussit eum gladio.

Neptūnus tridente suo terrā percussit.

Eurōpa ab Afrīca sejūngitur freto Gaditāno.

¹ Plato, ⁴ discendi cupiditāte ³ ductus, ² *Ægyptum*⁶ ⁵ peragravit.

Feræ domantur fame atque verberibus.

Crocodilus pelle durissīma contra omnes ictus munitur.

Elephanti spirant, bibunt, odorantur proboscide.

Dentes usu atteruntur, sed igne non cremantur.

Multi morbi curantur abstinentiā et quiete.

Deus colitur non corporibus opimis taurorum contrucidatis,
non auro, non argento, sed voluntate piā et rectā.

Laboribus, consiliis, periculisque Cicerōnis, Romā conser-
vāta est.

English Examples.

Let us always worship God *Semper Deus colo* (*pres. sub.*)
with a pure mind. *purus animus.*

The world was created by God. *Mundus Deus creo.*
God.

Demosthenes overcame the Demosthēnes natura impedi-
impediments of nature by *mentum vinco, industria*
industry and diligence. *atque diligentia.*

The sun shines by his own light. *Sol suus lux luceo; luna et*
light; the moon and the *planēta sol lumen luceo.*
planets shine by the light
of the sun.

Rome was founded by Romulus. *Roma Romulus fundo.*
ulus.

¹ For the government of *Ægyptum* see Rule 42d.

The manners of men are *Mos homo adversitas æquè ac*
 changed by adversity as *prosperitas muto.*
 well as by prosperity.

We are all drawn by a desire *Nos omnis trahò laus studium.*
 sire¹ of praise.

Pompey was conquered by Pompeius *Cæsar vinco.*
Cæsar.

3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by*, or *through which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place in the ablative.

1. The place WHERE.

RULE XLVII. When the place *where*, or *in which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

Vixit Romæ,
he lived at Rome.

Latin Examples.

Quid Romæ faciam? *Philippus Neapoli est.*

Templum Dianæ fuit Ephesi.

Marcus Antonius primus Romæ leones ad currum junxit.

¹ Desire, *studium*.

Pompeius Thessaliæ a Cæsare fugātus est.

¹ ⁴ ⁶ ³ ⁵ ²
Cato sibi Uticæ mortem ferro conscivit.

Antonius Actii victus est ab Augusto navāli pugnā clarā et illustri.

Sappho Lesbi natus est.

Ægypti multa mira sunt et artis et naturæ opēra: inter ea quæ manibus hominum facta sunt pyramides.

English Examples.

Cicero was born at Arpinum. Cicero Arpinum nascor.

Dionysius taught children at Corinth. Dionysius Corinthus liberi doceo.

At Sparta old age was most honoured. Sparta senectus sum honoratus. (*super.*)

At Rome were exhibited the most barbarous sports. Ludus truculentus Roma ostendo.

Hannibal conquered the Roman army at Cannæ. Hannibal Cannæ exercitus Romānus vinco.

There is a temple of Neptune at Tænarus, which the Greek accounts a most heinous crime to pollute. Fanum Neptūnus sum Tænarus, qui violō nefas puto Græcus.

2. The place WHITHER.

RULE XLVIII. When the place *whither*, or *to which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

Venit Romam,
he came to Rome.

Latin Examples.

Deindè Cæsar Pharsålum petiit, ubi Pompeium Pharsalico prælio fudit.

Misērunt Delphos consultum quid facērent de rebus suis. Pompeius victus Pharsaliæ, Alexandriam contendit.

Quum Scipio a Cæsare victus est, Cato Uticam Africæ urbem petiuit.

Cicero Athēnas petiuit, ut Antiōchum philosophum audiret: indè, eloquentiæ gratiā, Rhodum se contulit, ubi Molōne,¹ rhetōre tum disertissimo, magistro usus est.

Alcibiādes clam se a custodibus subduxit, et inde primum Elīdem, deinde Thebas venit.

English Examples.

Regulus returned to Carthage. Regulus Carthāgo redeo.

If I dared, I would go to Athens. Si audeo Athēnæ peto.

I wish to go to Alexandria. Volo Alexandriā eo.

After the battle of Cannæ. Post Cannæ pugna, Hannibal Hannibal went to Capua. Capua contendo.

He led his army to Megara, and immediately after to Corinth. Is exercitus dūco Megāra, et postquam Corinthus.

When Themistocles saw that he was not safe enough at Argos, he removed to Corcyra. Themistōcles, ubi video sui (acc.) non satis tutus sum Argi, Corcyra demigro.

¹ Governed by unus est: see Rule 21st.

3. *The place WHENCE.*

RULE XLIX. When the place *whence*, or *from which*, or the place *by* or *through which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

Discessit Corintho,
he departed from Corinth.

Latin Examples.

Pompeius, Syriâ¹ decēdens, quum Rhodum venisset, nobilissimum philosophum Posidonium cupiit audire.

Ænēas Trojâ aufūgit, et in Italiā venit.

Cæsar, Galliâ¹ remeans, contra senātūs consultum, Romam cum exercitu petiit.

Cyrus ejus exercitum Sarde Babylōnem duxit: Cunaxæ victus et occisus est.

English Examples.

Themistocles was banished Themistōcles Athēnæ expello.
from Athens.

Dionysius sent for Plato from Dionysius Plato Athēnæ ar-
Athens. cesso.

Clodius suddenly departed Clodius subito Roma discēdo,
from Rome, that he might ut insidiæ Milo paro.
prepare an ambush for
Milo.

I received many letters from Multus epistōla Roma accipio.
Rome.

¹ The preposition, though generally added to names of countries, is sometimes omitted.

Domus and Rus.

RULE L. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

Manet domi, Rediit rure,
he stays at home. he is returned from the country.

Latin Examples.

At nobis est domi¹ inopia; foris æs aliënum.

Nunc vero exsul domo,² atque omnium honestarum rerum egens.

Allobroges, priusquam domum³ pergerent, cum Catilinâ societatem confirmaverunt.

Domi industria, foris justum imperium fuit.

English Examples.

I will not go from my father's Non eo domus paternus.
house.

A messenger came to him Nuntius ad is domus venio.
from home.

I fear lest my father should Timeo ne meus pater rus re-
return from the country. deo.

He came to the house of Venio Pompeius domus pri-
Pompey early in the morn- mus lux (abl.⁴)
ing.

He has gone to the country Rus proficiscor reliquus vita
to pass the rest of his life. ago.

¹ In the genitive, by Rule 47. Repeat this Rule first, then the 47th.

² In the ablative, by Rule 49.

³ In the accusative, by Rule 48.

⁴ See Rule 53.

Good manners prevailed at Bonus most tunc tempus (*gen.*¹)
that time, at home. domus valeo.

RULE LI. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

Natus est in Italiâ, Rediit ex Italiâ,
he was born in Italy. he returned from Italy.

Latin Examples.

Transiit per Italiam.

Ab Eurôpâ petis Asiam; ex Asiâ transis in Eurôpam.

Iter in Ciliciam faciam per Cappadociam.

Ex Ephëso huc ad meum sodâlem litëras misi.

Solon, postquam leges Atheniensibus dedit, in Asiam,

Ægyptumque peregrinâtus est: deinde Athënas rediit.

English Examples.

Cæsar marched to farther Cæsar in Gallia ulterior con-
Gaul. tendo.

I rejoice that you did not go Gandeo tu (*acc.*) non in Brit-
into Britain. tania proficiscor.

Hannibal, having marched Hannibal quum per Italia in-
through Italy, returned to cêdo, Carthâgo redeo.
Carthage.

Hannibal sent one army into Hannibal unus exercitus in
Spain, and left another in Hispania mitto, alterque in
Africa. Afrîca relinquo.

¹ See Rule 37.

4. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

RULE LII. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

Murus est decem pedes altus,
the wall is ten feet high.

Latin Examples.

Abest Italia ab Sardinia centum viginti millia passuum.¹

Locus est ab urbe decem millia passuum.

Jam mille passus processeram.

Babylōnis muri fuerunt ducentos cubitos² alti.

Lavinium distat ab Romā itinēre unius diēi.³

Muri Athēnis ad Piraeum porrecti sunt tria millia passuum
 in longitudine.

English Examples.

I will not go a foot from you. Non discēdo pes a tu.

The Persian gulf is distant Persicus sinus mare Ruber
 from the Red sea one hundred and fifty miles. absum centum et quinquaginta mille passus. (*abl.*)

He pitched his camp six miles from the enemy. Pono castra sex mille passus
 ab hostis. (*plur.*)

Hannibal was three days journey from Tarentum. Hannibal a Tarentum tres
 dies (*gen.*) iter. (*acc.*)

¹ Governed by *millia*, by Rule 11th. A thousand paces made one mile: ten thousand paces were therefore ten miles.

² A cubit was a foot and an half long.

³ The ancients often reckoned distances by days' journeys.

5. TIME.

RULE LIII. Time *when* is put in the *ablative*; time *how long* is put in the *accusative* or *ablative*; as,

Venit tertiâ horâ,
he came at the third hour.

Mansit paucos dies, Abfuit sex mensibus.
he stayed a few days. he was away six months.

Latin Examples.

Antiquissimis temporibus Saturnus in Italiam venisse dicitur.

Postero die, procul a castris, hostes in collibus constitērunt.
Hieme ursi in antris dormiunt.

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.

Anno decimo quarto postquam in Italiam Hannibal venerat, Scipio consul creātus¹ et in Africam missus est.

Eodem die legāti ab hostibus missi ad Cæsarem de pace venērunt.

Nostri milites horas quatuor fortissime pugnāvērunt.

Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus est hostes sub montem consedissee, millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo.

English Examples.

He came at three o'clock. Venio tertius hora.

Hippocrates, a most celebrated physician, lived ninety-nine years. Hippocrātes, medicus celēber, vivō annus undecentum.

The sun shone out on the third day. Tertius dies sol luceo.

¹ Est is here understood to creātus.

He had a house for many Multus annus is (*dat.*) domus
years at Rome. sum Roma.

Rome was built in the seven Roma condo septingentesimus
hundred and fifty-third et quinquagesimus tertius
year before Christ. annus ante Christus.

On the next day they re- Posterus dies castra ex is
moved the camp from that locus moveo.
place.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

Q. What is a *Compound Sentence*?

A. A *Compound Sentence* is that which is made up of two or more simple sentences, and which has more than one nominative, and one verb.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

RULE LIV. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

Vir	qui,	Fœmīna	quæ,	Negotium	quod,
the man	who.	the woman	who.	the thing	which.

Observation First. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

Latin Examples.

6	5	7	8	1	2	4	3
Minor est quàm servus domīnus, qui servos timet.							
Non omnis ager, qui seritur, fert fruges.							

Beneficium reddit¹ qui ejus² bene memor est.

Amo virum qui pauca loquitur.

Ego sum Miltiades, qui Persas vici.

Deus, qui noscit corda et cogitationes, puniet scelestos,
qui ejus præcepta violant, et remunerabit bonos.

Cato, qui fuit sapiens, amavit patriam.

Illa habet modestiam, quæ est ornatus vitæ.

Omnes Romani senatores convenient, qui promisérunt.

English Examples.

God who gives life.

Deus qui do vita.

We love the man who loves God. Amo vir qui Deus amo.
God.

Men, who neglect religion, Ille (*nom. plur.*) qui religio
will be punished hereafter. negligo, olim punio.

There is a God in the world, Deus sum in mundus, qui
who governs all things. omnis guberno.

He is braver who conquers himself, than he who conquers the strongest city. Ille qui sui vinco fortis sum
quàm qui urbs munitus expugno.

There are four parts of the world, which are, Europe, Asia, Africa, and America. Sum mundus quatuor pars,
qui sum Eurōpa, Asia, Afrīca, et Americā.

The hour which is past cannot return. Hora qui prætereo (*perf.*) non redeo possum.

Observation Second. But when a nominative does come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be in that case, which the verb, or noun following, or the preposition going before, usually governs.

¹ *Ille* is understood, to which *qui* relates.

² For the government of *ejus* by *memor*, see Rule 10th.

Latin Examples.

Est Deus quem colimus, cui nullus est similis, cujus¹ munere vivimus, a quo facta sunt omnia.

Urbs, quam Romulus condidit, Roma vocata est.

Est bonus puer quem gloria excitat, et laus delectat.

Sulla mox Romam ingressus est, quam caede² et sanguine civium replēvit.

Cæsar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transisse decrevit.

Avaritia pecuniæ studium habet, quam nemo sapiens concupivit.

Felices sunt, quorum³ corda pura sunt.

Legati ab iis venērunt, quorum oratio grata fuit.

Est Deus, cujus⁴ numen adorarēmus, cui⁵ parerēmus, et a quo conservamur.

Commōda, quibus utimur, lux qua fruimur, spiritus quem ducimus, dantur et impertiuntur nobis a Deo.

English Examples.

The mountains which we see. Mons qui video.

The breath which we draw, Spiritus, qui duco, a Deus comes from Heaven. venio.

The city, which Romulus Urbs qui Romulus condo, built, was called Rome. co Roma.

¹ Cujus, *of whom*, to be rendered *whose*; as, cujus munere, *by whose bounty*.

² See Rule 27th.

³ Quorum, *of whom*, to be rendered *whose*: Thus, quorum corda, *whose hearts wherein*, is equivalent to *in which*; *whereby*, to *by which*; *whereof*, to *of which*; *wherewith*, to *with which*, &c.

⁴ Governed by *numen*, by Rule 6th.

⁵ See Rule 17th, Observation 5th.

Some men hate those things Aliquis odi is (*acc. plur. neut.*)
which others love. qui alius amo.

The God whom we adore is Deus, qui colo, bonus et mag-
the best and the greatest. nus sum.

I see Italy, which your an- Italia, qui majores vester vin-
cesters conquered. co, video.

The arrows which they send Sagitta, qui emitto, lethalis
forth are deadly. sum.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

RULE LV. The conjunctions, *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel*, and some others, couple similar cases and modes; as,

Honōra patrem et matrem,
honour father and-mother.

Latin Examples.

Gallia posita est inter Pyrenæos montes et Rhenum.
Erant in Pompeio multæ ac magnæ virtutes, ac præcipuè
admiranda frugalitas.

Nos patriæ fines, et dulcia relinquimus arva.

Accipere præstat quam facere injuriam.

Quis nam igitur est liber?

Sapiens, qui sibi imperiosus; quem neque paupertas, neque
mors, neque vincula terrent.

Non census, nec clarum nomen avorum, sed virtus magnos¹
facit.

Germāni vetēres nōn habuerunt urbes mœnibus cinctas,
aut fossis aggeribusque munitas.

¹ *Magnos* agrees with *viros* understood.

English Examples.

The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. *Concīdo ventus, fugioque nubes.*

Length of time consumes iron and stone. *Vetustas ferram et lapis (plur.) exēdo.*

Virtue is esteemed illustrious and immortal. *Virtus æstīmo clarus et immortalis.*

Neither wealth, nor power, nor pleasures, render a man happy. *Nec divitiæ, nec potestas, nec voluptas, aliquis beatus facio.*

I did not blame your cause, but your plan. *Non res sed consilium reprehendo.*

He reached land at day-break, and brought over all the ships safe. *Primus lux¹ terra attingo, omnisque incolumis navis perduco.*

RULE LVI. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (*as, et, ac, atque, &c.*) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; *as,*

*Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti,
Peter and John who are learned.*

Latin Examples.

Fames et sitis sunt molestæ.

Demosthēnes et Cicēro oratōres præstantissīmi fuērunt.

Rhenus Rhodanusque Eurōpæ amnēs sunt maximī.

Græciæ civitatēs clarissimæ fuērunt Athēnæ atque Lacedæmon.

¹ Ablative by Rule 53rd, which see.

Lupus et agnus, siti compulsi, ad rivum eundem venērunt.
Clarissīmi amnes Italiæ sunt Padus et Tibēris.

Menelæus et Paris armāti pugnāvērunt propter Helēnam et divitias.

English Examples.

The master and the scholar Magister et discipūlus stu-
study. deo.

Homer and Milton were Homērus et Milton cæcus
blind. sum.

Alexander and Julius Cæsar Alexander et Julius Cæsar
were very great command- sum præstans (*super.*) dux.
ers.

The husband and the wife Maritus et uxor consentio.
agree.

My father and my mother Meus pater et mater sum pius.
are pious.

Riches, power, and honour, Divitiæ, potestas, et honor
are uncertain. sum incertus.

Habit and reason have made Mos et ratio tu patiens et
you more patient and gen- placidus facio.
tle.

RULE LVII. The conjunctions, *ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam, dummodo*, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as,

Lego ut discam, Utinam sapiēres,
I read that I may learn. O that you were wise.

Latin Examples.

Tanta est in Indiâ ubertas soli, ut sub unâ ficu turmæ
equitum condantur.

Orandum est¹ ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.

Hic locus est unus, quò perfugiant.

¹ ² ³ ⁵ ⁸ ⁷ ⁶ ⁴
Dicam equidem, licet arma mihi mortemque minentur.

¹ ³ ⁴ ²
Utinam illum diem videam.

Ingens fuit Romæ timor, ne iterum Galli urbem occuparent.

Omnia honesta negligunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur.

Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret, qui ab eo postularent, ut aliquem locum medium utrisque colloquio deligeret.

English Examples.

God sent his Son into the world, that the world might be saved.
Deus is Filium in mundus mitto, ut mundus per is through him might be servo.

I will detect the thief, though he threatens arms and death.
Detego furtum, licet arma et mors minor.

I wish² you were wise. Utinam tu sapio.

Love not sleep lest thou come to poverty.
Amo non somnus, ne pauper sum.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

RULE LVIII. The comparative degree governs the ablative, (*when it can be translated by than;*³ as,

Dulcior melle	Præstantior auro,
sweeter than honey.	better than gold.

¹ Nobis is understood.

² I wish—utinam.

³ That is, when quàm, than, is omitted after a comparative, the substantive following is put in the ablative.

Latin Examples.

Pax optabilior est bello. Cicero fuit honestior Cæsare.
Nihil est clementiâ divinius. Aurum gravius est argento.
Luna terræ proprior est sole. Virtus opibus melior.
Adamas durior est ferro, ferrum durius cæteris metallis.
Inter urbes Siciliæ nulla fuit illustrior Syracûsis.
Greciâ enim nulla regio magnorum ingeniörum¹ fuit feracior.

English Examples.

Solon was wiser than Croesus. Solon sapiens sum Cræsus.
Ice is colder than marble. Glacies sum frigidus marmor.
What is more desirable than wisdom? Quis sum optabilis sapientia?
Nothing is more commendable than mildness and clemency. Nihil sum laudabilis lenitas et clementia.
Nothing is more pleasant to the mind than the light of truth. Nihil animus jucundus sum veritas lux.
The eloquence of Xenophon was sweeter than honey. Xenophon eloquentia dulcis sum mel.
Silver is of less value than gold; gold, than the virtues. Argentum est minor² aurum; aurum, virtus. (*abl. plur.*)

¹ Governed by *feracior* by Rule 14th, which see.

² Genitive. See Rule 45th. To that Rule are excepted these genitives, *tanti, quanti, pluris*, and *minoris*.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

RULE LIX. A Substantive and a Participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

Sole	oriente,	tenēbræ fugiunt,
<i>the sun</i>	<i>rising,</i>	<i>darkness flies away.</i>
or <i>while the sun riseth,</i>	}	

Opere	peracto,	ludēmus,
<i>our work</i>	<i>being finished,</i>	<i>let us play.</i>
or <i>when our work is finished,</i>	}	

Latin Examples.

Xenophon philosophus, morte filii audita, vultu nihil¹ immutato dixit: "Sciēbam me mortālem² genuisse."

Etiam sanato vulnere, cicatrix manet.

Me duce, tutus eris.

Imperante Augusto, natus est Christus; imperante Tiberio, crucifixus.

Philippo, rege Macedoniæ, mortuo, filius ejus Perseus rebellavit, ingentibus copiis paratis.

Bellis civilibus confectis, Cæsar dictator in perpetuum³ creatus est.

Interfecto Cæsare, anno Urbis septingentesimo nono,⁴ bel-

¹ Nihil is governed by secundum, as *to*, understood.

² *Ilum* is understood, with which mortālem agrees.

³ *Tempus* is understood: the phrase, in perpetuum, means *perpetually, forever*.

⁴ The Romans reckoned their dates from the founding of the city, as we do ours, from the birth of Christ. Rome was founded by Romulus 753 before Christ.

la civilia reparata sunt. Ergo turbata republica, Antonius, multis sceleribus commissis, a senatu hostis iudicatus est.

His rebus gestis, omni Gallia pacata, tanta huius belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, ut ab nationibus, quæ trans Rhenum incolerent, mitterentur legati ad Cæsarem, quæ se obsides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur.

English Examples.

He came to Rome when Ma- Marius consul, Roma venit.
rius was consul: (*Marius*
being consul.)

When nature is our guide, Natura dux, nullus modus¹
(*nature being our guide,*) erro possum.
we can by no means err.

The cause being removed, Causa amoveo, res ipse au-
the effect is removed. fero.

If benevolence be taken Benevolentia tollo, omnis
away, (*benevolence being* oblectatio ab vita removeo.
taken away,) all pleasure
is removed from life.

Laying aside diversion, (*di-* Amoveo ludus, serius quæro.
version being laid aside,) (*sub. pres.*)
let us attend to serious
things.

¹ Ablative, by Rule 46th.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

CONTRACTIONS IN THE VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

maso. for masculine gender.

fem. for feminine gender.

neut. for neuter gender.

com. for common gender.

The ending of the genitive case, of course, determines the declension. See page 4.

VERBS.

act. for an active verb.

pass. for a passive verb.

neut. for a neuter verb.

dep. for a deponent verb.

imper. for an impersonal verb.

irreg. for an irregular verb.

The syllable before *re*, of the infinitive mode, of course, determines the conjugation. See page 52.

The adjectives are declined through the nominative; and the genitive case masculine is given.

pron. for a pronoun.

part. for a participle.

adv. for an adverb.

prep. for a preposition.

inter. for an interjection.

conj. for a conjunction.

comp. for the comparative degree.

super. for the superlative degree.

gen. for the genitive case.

ind. indeclinable.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

- Abdo, abdĕre, abdĭdi, abdĭtum; act. *to conceal, to plunge.*
Abeo, abĭre, abĭvi, abĭtum; neut. *to depart, to go away.*
Absolvo, absolvĕre, absolvi, absolĭtum; act. *to acquit.*
Absterreo, absterĕre, absterrui, absterrĭtum; act. *to frighten.*
Abstinencia, abstinentiæ; fem. *abstinence, integrity.*
Absum, abesse, abfui; irreg. *to be absent.* See sum, page 53.
Abundĕ; adv. *enough, sufficiently.*
Abundo, abundāre, abundāvi, abundātum; neut. *to abound.*
Abūtor, abūti, abūsus sum; dep. *to abuse.*
Ac; conj. *and.*
Accĕdo, accedĕre, accessi, accessum; act. *to approach.*
Accĭdit; imper. *it happened.*
Accĭdo, accidĕre, accĭdi; supine wanting; neut. *to fall out, to happen.*
Accipio, accipĕre, accĕpi, acceptum; act. *to receive.*
Accipĭter, accipĭtris; masc. *a hawk.*
Accŭso, accusāre, accusāvi, accusātum; act. *to accuse.*
Acerbus, acerba, acerbum; gen. acerbi; *sour, cruel, cross.*
Achilles, Achillis; masc. *Achilles, a Grecian general.*
Acies, aciĕi; fem. *an army.*
Acta, actæ; fem. *a shore.*
Actium, Actii, neut. *Actium, a promontory of Epĭrus, in Greece.*
Acus, acŭs; fem. *a needle.*
Acŭtus, acŭta, acŭtum; gen. acŭti; *sharp, quick, talented.*
Adāmas, adamantis; masc. *a diamond.*
Adeo, adĭre, adĭvi, and adii, adĭtum; neut. *to go to, to approach.*
Adipiscor, adipisei, adeptus sum; dep. *to obtain.*
Adjŭvo, adjuvāre, adjŭvi, adjŭtum; act. *to help, to assist.*
Admĭror, admirāri, admirātus sum; dep. *to admire, to wonder at.*
Admōdŭm; adv. *very, very much.* (Not admōdum, as on p. 156.)
Adno, adnāre, adnāvi, adnātum; neut. *to swim to.*
Adolescens, adolescentis; com. *a young man or woman.*

Adōro, adorāre, adorāvi, adorātum; act. *to adore.*

Adsum, adesse, adfui; irreg. (see sum, page 53,) *to be present.*

Advenio, advenīre, advēni, adventum; neut. *to come.*

Ædifico, ædificāre, ædificāvi, ædificātum; act. *to build.*

Ægrōto, ægrotāre, ægrotāvi, ægrotātum; neut. *to be sick.*

Ægyptus, Ægypti; fem. *Ægypt*, a part of Africa.

Ænēas, Ænēæ; dat. Ænēæ; acc. Ænēam or Ænēan; voc. Ænēā; abl.

Ænēā; *Æneas*, a Trojan prince.

Æquus, æqua, æquum; gen. æqui; *equal.*

Æs, æris; neut. *copper, money.*

Ætas, ætātis; fem. *summer.*

Æstimo, æstimāre, æstimāvi, æstimātum; act. *to esteem, to value.*

Ætas, ætātis; fem. *age.*

Æthiopia, Æthiopis; fem. *Æthiopia*, a country in Africa.

Affēro, afferre, attūli, allātum; act. *to bring.*

Affluo, affluere, affluxi, affluxum; neut. *to abound.*

Afrīca, Afrīcæ; fem. *Africa.*

Ager, agri; masc. *a field.*

Agger, aggēris; masc. *a mound, a rampart.*

Agnosco, agnoscere, agnōvi, agnītum; act. *to acknowledge.*

Agnus, agni; masc. *a lamb.*

Ago, agere, egi, actum; act. *to drive, to do.* This verb must be translated according to the noun which it governs; as, agere navim, *to steer a ship*; agere vitam, *to pass a life.*

Agricola, agricola; masc. *a husbandman.*

Albus, alba, album; gen. albi; *white.*

Alcibiādes, Alcibiādis; masc. *Alcibiades*, an Athenian.

Alexander, Alexandri; masc. *Alexander*, King of Macedon.

Algor, algōris; masc. *cold.*

Alienus, aliēna, aliēnum; gen. aliēni; *another man's, foreign, improper.*

Aliquis, aliquā, aliquod or aliquid; gen. alicūjus; *some, some person or thing.*

Allobrōges, Allobrōgum; masc. *the Allobroges*, a people of ancient Gaul.

Alo, alere, alui, alitum and altum; act. *to nourish.*

Altus, alta, altum; gen. alti; *high.*

Amazon, Amazōnis; masc. *the Amazon*, a river of South America.

Ambītus, ambītūs; masc. literally means *going around*, and was generally applied to those who went around to solicit offices; hence it came to mean *bribery.*

Ambo, ambæ, ambō; gen. ambōrum; both: like *duo*: see page 37.

Ambūlo, ambulāre, ambulāvi, ambulātum; neut. *to walk*.

America, Americæ; fem. *America*.

Amīcus, amīci; masc. *a friend*.

Amīcus, amīca, amīcum; gen. amīci; *friendly*.

Amnis, amnis; masc. *a river*.

Amo, amāre, amāvi, amātum; act. *to love*.

Amor, amoris; masc. *love*.

Anaxagōras, Anaxagōræ; masc. *Anaxagoras*, a Grecian philosopher.

Anīma, anīmæ; fem. *the soul*.

Anīmal, animālis; neut. *an animal*.

Anīmus, anīmi; masc. *the mind, courage*.

Annuo, annuere, annui; (no supine;) act. and neut. *to nod to, to favour*.

Annus, anni; masc. *a year*.

Antecello, antecellere, antecellui; (no supine,) act. *to excel*.

Antepōno, antepōnere, anteposui, antepositum; act. *to prefer*.

Antevenio, antevenire, antevēni, anteventum; neut. *to precede, to go before*.

Antiōchus, Antiōchi; masc. *Antiochus*, a Grecian philosopher.

Antīquus, antīqua, antīquum; gen. antīqui; *ancient*.

Antonius, Antonii; masc. *Antony*, an infamous Roman senator.

Antrum, antri; neut. *a cave, a cavern*.

Anxius, anxia, anxium; *anxious*.

Apennīnus, Apennīni; masc. *a range of the Apennine mountains*.

Aperio, aperire, aperui, apertum; act. *to open*.

Appetītus, appetītūs; masc. *the appetite*; in the plural number, *passions, affections*.

Aptē; adv. *fitly, properly*.

Aptus, apta, aptum; gen. apti; *fit, suitable*.

Aqua, Aquæ; fem. *water*.

Arbitror, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum; dep. *to think, to suppose*.

Arbor, arboris; fem. *a tree*.

Arca, arcæ; fem. *a chest*.

Arcesso, arcessere, arcessivi, arcessitum; act. *to call, to send for*.

Arduus, ardua, arduum; gen. ardui; *high, steep, difficult*.

Argentum, argenti; neut. *silver*.

Arguo, arguere, argui, argutum; act. *to accuse, to convict*.

Ariovistus, Ariovisti; masc. *Ariovistus*, a German prince.

Aristotēles, Aristotēlis; masc. *Aristotle*, a Grecian philosopher.

- Arma**, armōrum; neut. *arms*: used only in the plural.
- Arōma**, aromātis; neut. seldom used in the singular. In the plural, aromāta, aromātum; *spices*.
- Ars**, artis; fem. *art*.
- Arundo**, arundinis; fem. *a reed*.
- Arvum**, arvi, neut. *a field*.
- As**, assis; masc. *a farthing, a cent*.
- Asia**, Asiæ; fem. *Asia*, one of the four quarters of the world.
- Asper**, aspēra, aspērūm; gen. aspēri; *rough, adverse*.
- Assēquor**, assēqui, assecūtus; dep. *to obtain, to reach*.
- Assiduus**, assiduua, assiduum; gen. assidui; *constant, perpetual*.
- At**; conj. *but*.
- Athēnæ**, Athenārum; fem. *Athens*, a city of Greece, (used only in the plural.)
- Atheniensis**, Atheniensis; masc. *an Athenian*.
- Atlānticus**, Atlantica, Atlanticum; (like bonus,) *the Atlantic ocean*.
- Atque**; conj. *and*.
- Attentio**, attentionis; fem. *attention*.
- Attentus**, attenta, attentum; gen. attenti; *attentive*.
- Attēro**, atterēre, attrivi, attritum; act. *to wear out*.
- Atticus**, Attici; masc. *Atticus*, a celebrated Roman knight, who was an intimate friend of Cicero.
- Auctor**, auctōris; masc. *an author, a founder*.
- Auctoritas**, auctoritatis; fem. *authority*.
- Audacia**, audaciæ; fem. *boldness*.
- Audax**, audax, audax; gen. audācis; *bold, brave*.
- Audens**, audens, audens; gen. audentis; *bold, daring*.
- Audio**, audire, audīvi, audītum; act. *to hear*.
- Aufēro**, auferre, abstūli, ablātum; act. *to take away*.
- Aufugio**, aufugere, aufūgi, aufugitum; act. *to run away from, to escape*.
- Augustus**, Augusti; masc. *August*, the name of a month.
- Augustus**, Augusti; masc. *Augustus*, a Roman emperor.
- Aurum**, auri; neut. *gold*.
- Aut**; conj. *or*.
- Auxilium**, auxilii; neut. *aid, assistance, auxiliary forces*.
- Avaritia**, avaritiæ; fem. *avarice*.
- Avārus**, avāra, avārum; gen. avāri; *covetous*, and when not connected with any noun, *an avaricious man*.
- Avīdus**, avīda, avidum; gen. avidi; *desirous, greedy of*.

Avis, avis; fem. *a bird*.

Avus, avi: masc. *a grandfather, an ancestor*.

Babylon, Babylōnis; fem. *Babylon*, a city of Asia.

Barbārus, barbāri; masc. *a barbarian*: properly it is an adjective having *homo* understood.

Beātē, adv. *happily*.

Beātus, beāta, beātum; gen. beāti, *happy*.

Bellum, belli, neut. *war*.

Benē; adv. *well*.

Benefacio, benefacere, benefeci, benefactum; neut. *to benefit, to do good to*.

Beneficium, beneficii; neut. *a kindness*.

Benevolentia, benevolentiae; fem. *benevolence*.

Benevōlus, benevōla, benevōlum; gen. benevōli; *benevolent, kind*.

Benignus, benigna, benignum; gen. benigni; *kind*.

Bestia; bestiae; fem. *brutes, beasts*.

Bibo, bibere, bibi, bibitum; act. *to drink*.

Biduum, bidui; neut. *the space of two days*.

Bonitas, bonitatis; fem. *goodness*.

Bonus, bona, bonum; gen. boni; *good*.

Brevi; adv. *in a short time*.

Brittania, Brittaniae; fem. *Britain, England*.

Brundusium, Brundusii; neut. *Brundisium*, a town in Italy.

Cædes, cædis; fem. *slaughter, murder*.

Cæsar, Cæsaris; masc. *Cæsar*, a great Roman general.

Cæter, cætëra, cætërum; gen. cætëri; *the other, the rest*.

Cætus, more generally written cœtus, cœtus; masc. *an assembly*.

Calamitosus, calamitosa, calamitosum; gen. calamitosi; *calamitous, miserable*.

Calcar, calcaris; neut. *a spur*.

Calidus, calida, calidum; gen. calidi; *warm, hot*.

Callidus, callida, callidum; gen. callidi; *wise, crafty*.

Canis, canis; com. *a dog*.

Cannæ, Cannarum; fem. plural; *Cannæ*, a town in the south of Italy.

(The word Cannæ, on p. 140, should be Cannarum.)

Capio, capere, cepi, captum; act. *to take, to receive*.

Cappadocia, Cappadociae; fem. *Cappadocia*, a country of Asia Minor.

Captus, capta, captum; gen. capti; *taken, bereft, deprived of*.

Capulus, capuli; masc. and capulum, capuli; neut. *a hilt or handle*.

Caput, capitis; neut. *a head.*

Carcer, carceris; masc. *a prison.*

Careo, carere, carui, caritum; neut. *to want, to be destitute of.*

Carmen, carminis; neut. *a song, a poem, a verse.*

Carthaginienses, Carthaginiensium; masc. *Carthaginians.*

Carthago, Carthaginis; fem. *Carthage*, a city of Africa, opposite to Rome.

Carus, cara, carum; gen. cari, *dear.*

Castrum, castris; neut. *a castle*: generally used in the plural, *Castra*, castrorum, meaning *camp* or *camps*.

Catena, catenae; fem. *a chain.*

Catilina, Catilinæ; masc. *Cataline*, a Roman who formed a conspiracy to betray his country.

Cato, Catonis; masc. *Cato*, a Roman philosopher.

Catulus, catuli; masc. *a whelp; the young of all animals.*

Causa, causae; fem. *cause.*

Caveo, cavere, cavi, cautum; act. *to beware, to take care of.*

Cedo, cedere, cessi, cessum; act. *to yield, to give place to.*

Celer, or celerris, celerris, celere; gen. celerris; *swift, quick.*

Celeritas, celeritatis; fem. *celerity,*

Celeriter; adv. *quickly.*

Census, census; masc. *a man's estate, wealth.*

Centum; ind. *a hundred.*

Ceres, Cereris; fem. *Ceres*, the goddess of tillage.

Certamen, certaminis; neut. *a contest, a battle.*

Certus, certa, certum; gen. certi; *certain, sure.*

Cethegus, Cethegi; masc. *Cethegus*, a Roman, concerned in Cataline's conspiracy.

Charta, chartae; fem. *paper.*

Cibus, cibi; masc. *meat, food.*

Cicatrix, cicatricis; fem. *a wound.*

Cicero, Ciceronis; masc. *Cicero*, the great Roman orator.

Cilicia, Ciliciæ; fem. *Cilicia*, a country of Asia Minor.

Cimon, Cimonis; masc. *Cimon*, an illustrious Athenian.

Cingo, cingere, cinxi, cinctum; act. *to gird, to surround.*

Circumveho, circumvehere, circumvexi, circumvectum; act. *to carry about.*

Circumvenio, circumvenire, circumveni, circumventum; act. *to surround, to besiege.*

Citò; adv. *quickly, shortly.*

Civīlis, civīlis, civīle; gen. civīlis; *civil, pertaining to the state.*

Civis, civis; com. *a citizen.*

Civitas, civitātis; fem. *a city.*

Clam; adv. *secretly.*

Clamo, clamāre, clamāvi, clamātum; act. *to cry out.*

Claritudo, claritudinis; fem. *renown, fame.*

Clarus, clara, clarum; gen. clari; *famous.*

Classis, classis; fem. *a fleet.*

Clemens, clemens, clemens; gen. clementis; *merciful, mild.*

Clementia, clementiæ; fem. *clemency.*

Clodius, Clodii; masc. *Clodius*, an infamous Roman, who was killed by Milo.

Cœptum, cœpti; neut. *a beginning, an enterprise.*

Cœtus, cœtus; masc. *an assembly.*

Cogitatio, Cogitatiōnis; fem. *a thought.*

Cogito, cogitāre, cogitāvi, cogitātum; act. *to think.*

Cognosco, cognoscere, cognōvi, cognitum; act. *to know.*

Cohors, cohortis; fem. *a cohort*, a band of soldiers.

Colligo, colligere, collēgi, collectum; act. *to collect.*

Colloquium, colloquii; neut. *conversation, conference.*

Colo, colere, colui, cultum; act. *to cultivate, to worship.*

Color, colōris; masc. *a colour.*

Colossus, colossi; masc. *a colossus*, an image much larger than the life.

Columba, columbæ; fem. *a dove.*

Comes, comitis; com. *a companion, an attendant.*

Commemoro, commemorāre, commemorāvi, commemorātum; act. *to commemorate, to mention.*

Committo, committēre, commisi, commissum; act. *to commit, to fight: committēre pugnam, to join battle.*

Commōdus, commōda, commōdum; gen. commōdi; *convenient.*

Commūnis, commūnis, commūne, gen. commūnis; *common.*

Compāro, comparāre, comparāvi, comparātum; act. *to compare, to provide.*

Compello, compellere, compūli, compulsum; act. *to drive, to compel.*

Complector, complecti, complexus sum; dep. *to embrace.*

Compōno, componere, composui, compositum; act. *to compare, to place side by side.*

Compositē; adv. *in order, orderly.*

Concedo, concedere, concessi, concessum; neut. *to yield to, to grant.*

Concupisco, concupiscere, concupivi, concupitum; act. to covet, to desire.

Condemno, condemnare, condemnavi, condemnatum; act. to condemn.

Condo, condere, condidi, conditum; act. to hide, to build.

Condūcit; imper. it is profitable.

Condūco, conducere, conduxi, conductum; act. to conduct.

Confēro, conferre, contūli, collatum; act. to bring, to compare; conferre se; to betake himself, to go.

Conficio, conficere, confēci, confectum; act. to finish, to kill.

Confido, confidere, confīdi, and confisus sum; to confide in.

Confirmo, confirmare, confirmavi, confirmatum; act. to confirm, to strengthen.

Confiteor, confitēri, confessus sum; dep. to confess.

Conjūro, conjurare, conjuravi, conjuratum; act. to conspire together, to plot; conjurāti, conjuratorum; conspirators.

Conscientia, conscientiae; fem. conscience.

Conscisco, consciscere, conscivi, conscitum; act. to procure, to get.

Conscius, conscia, conscius; gen. conscii; conscious.

Consequor, consequi, consecutus sum; dep. to obtain, to attain.

Conservo, conservare, conservavi, conservatum; act. to preserve.

Consido, considere, consēdi, consessum; neut. to sit down.

Consilium, consilii; neut. a design, counsel.

Consolor, consolari, consolatus sum; dep. to console.

Conspirator, conspiratoris; masc. a conspirator.

Constantia, constantiae; fem. constancy.

Constat, imper. it is evident.

Consuetudo, consuetudinis; fem. custom.

Consul, consulis; masc. a consul.

Consulatus, consulatus; masc. the consulship.

Consulo, consulere, consului, consultum; act. to consult.

Contemno, contemnere, contempsi, contemptum; act. to despise.

Contendo, contendere, contendi, contensum; act. and neut. to stretch, to march.

Contentio, contentiōnis; fem. contention.

Contentus, contenta, contentum; gen. contenti; content.

Contiguus, contigua, contiguum; gen. contigui; near, contiguous.

Contineo, continere, continui, contentum; act. to contain, to keep.

Contra; adv. on the contrary, on the other hand.

Contrucidō, contrucidare, contrucidavi, contrucidatum; act. to slay, to kill.

Contrarius, contraria, contrarium; gen. contrarii; *contrary to*.
 Conveniēter; adv. *consistently, agreeably to*.
 Convenio, convenīre, convēni, conventum; neut. *to meet*.
 Copia, copiae; fem. *an abundance*; plur. copiae; *military forces*.
 Cor, cordis; neut. *the heart*.
 Corpus, corpōris; neut. *a body*.
 Cortex, corticis; masc, or fem. *a cork, the bark of a tree*.
 Credo, credēre, credīdi, creditum; act. *to believe*.
 Cremo, cremāre, cremāvi, cremātum; act. *to burn*.
 Creo, creāre, creāvi, creātum; act. *to create*.
 Cresco, crescere, crevi, cretum; neut. *to grow, to increase*.
 Crimen, criminis; neut. *crime, a fault*.
 Crocodilus, crocodili, masc. *a crocodile*.
 Cræsus, Cræsi; masc. *Cræsus, King of Lydia, famed for his wealth*.
 Crucifigo, crucifigēre, crucifixi, crucifixum; act. *to crucify*.
 Cruentus, cruenta, cruentum; gen. cruenti; *bloody, cruel*.
 Cras, cruris; neut. *the leg*.
 Cubitus, cubiti; masc. *a cubit, a measure of 18 inches*.
 Cuique; dative of quisque, quæque, quodque; *to each, to every one*.
 Culpa, culpæ; fem. *blame, a fault*.
 Culter, cultri; masc. *a knife*.
 Cūm; conj. *when*.
 Cunaxa, Cunaxæ; *Cunaxa, a city of Asia Minor*.
 Cunctus, cuncta, cunctum; gen. cuncti; *all, the whole, altogether*.
 Cupiditas, cupiditātis; fem. *a desire*.
 Cupidus, cupīda, cupīdum; gen. cupīdi; *desirous*.
 Cupio, cupēre, or cupīre, cupīvi, cupītum; act. *to desire*.
 Cura, curæ; fem. *care*.
 Curo, curāre, curāvi, curātum; act. *to take care of, to cure, to heal*.
 Curro, currēre, cucūrri, cursum; neut. *to run*.
 Currus, currūs, masc. *a chariot*.
 Cursus, cursūs; masc. *a course*.
 Custodio, custodire, custodīvi, custodītum; act. *to guard*.
 Cyrus, Cyri; masc. *Cyrus, King of Persia*.
 Dāmo, damnāre, damnāvi, damnātum; act. *to condemn*.
 Debeo, debēre, debui, debitum; act. *to owe, to be obliged*; and when used with the infinitive, *I ought or should*.
 Decēdo, decedēre, decessi, decessum; neut. *to depart*.
 Decem; a numeral adj. ind. *ten*.

Decerno, decernere, decrēvi, decrētum; act. *to decree, to resolve.*

Decimus, decīma, decimum; gen. *decīmi; the tenth.*

Decus, decōris; neut. *an ornament.*

Dedēcus, dedecōris; neut. *disgrace.*

Dedo, dedere, dedīdi, dedītum; act. *to submit, to give up.*

Defendo, defendere, defendi, defensum; act. *to defend.*

Defetiscor, defetisci, defessus sum; neut. *to be weary.*

Deficio, deficere, defēci, defectum; act. *to leave, or fail on.*

Deinde; adv. *afterwards.*

Delābor, delābi, delapsus sum; dep. *to slip; to fall to decay; to flow, as a river.*

Delecto, delectare, delectāvi, delectātum; act. *to delight.*

Deleo, delere, delēvi, delētum; act. *to blot out, to destroy.*

Delibero, deliberare, deliberāvi, deliberātum; act. *to deliberate.*

Deligo, deligere, delēgi, delectum; act. *to choose.*

Delphi, Delphōrum; masc. *Delphi, a city of Greece, famous for its oracle of Apollo.*

Delphīnus, delphīni; masc. *a dolphin.*

Dementia, dementiæ; fem. *madness, folly.*

Demonstro, demonstrare, demonstrāvi, demonstrātum; act. *to show, to demonstrate.*

Demosthēnes, Demosthēnis; masc. *Demosthenes, the celebrated Grecian orator.*

Dens, dentis; fem. *a tooth.*

Deploro, deplorare, deplorāvi, deplorātum; act. *to deplore.*

Deposco, deprecere, depoposci, deprecitum; act. *to require, to demand.*

Desero, deserere, deserui, desertum; act. *to abandon.*

Deterreo, deterrere, deterrui, deterritum; act. *to deter.*

Detrimentum, detrimenti; neut. *hurt, detriment.*

Detrudo, detrudere, detrūsi, detrusum; act. *to shove from.*

Deus, Dei; masc. *God.* Sometimes it is feminine, and signifies a goddess.

Diāna, Diānæ; fem. *Diana, the goddess of hunting.*

Dico, dicere, dixi, dictum; act. *to say.*

Dietator, dictatōris; masc. *a dictator.*

Dies, diēi; masc. or fem. in the sing. and masc. in the plural; *a day.*

Difficilis, difficilis, difficile; gen. *difficilis; difficult.*

Dignus, digna, dignum; gen. *digni; worthy.*

Dii, plural of Deus, for Dei, Deorum; masc. *the gods.*

- Diligentia**, diligentiae; fem. *diligence*.
Diogēnes, Diogēnis; masc. *Diogenes*, a Grecian philosopher.
Discēdo, discedere, discessi, discessum; neut. *to depart*.
Discipulus, discipuli; masc. *a scholar, a disciple, a learner*.
Disco, discere, didici; (no supine,) act. *to learn*.
Discordia, discordiae; fem. *discord*.
Disertus, diserta, disertum; gen. disertī; *eloquent*.
Displiceo, displicere, displicui, displicitum; neut. *to displease*.
Disputo, disputare, disputavi, disputatum; act. *to dispute, to argue*.
Distinctē; adv. *distinctly, methodically*.
Disto, distare, distiti; neut. *to be distant*.
Diū; adv. *long*; comp. diutius; *longer*; super. diutissimē; *longest*.
Diutīne; adv. *a long time*.
Dives, dives, dives; gen. divitis; *rich*.
Divinus, divina, divinum; gen. divini; *divine, noble*.
Divitiæ, divitiarum; fem. plur. *riches*.
Do, dare, dedi, datum; act. *to give*.
Doceo, docere, docui, doctum; act. *to teach*.
Doctrīna, doctrinae; fem. *knowledge, learning*.
Doctus, docta, doctum; gen. docti; part. or adj. *learned*.
Dolor, doloris; masc. *pain, grief*.
Domīnus, domini; masc. *a master*.
Domo, domare, domui, domitum; act. *to subdue*.
Domus, domus, or domi; fem. *a house*.
Dono, donare, donavi, donatum; act. *to give*.
Dormio, dormire, dormivi, dormitum; neut. *to sleep*.
Ducenti, ducentæ, ducenta; gen. ducentorum; *two hundred*.
Duco, ducere, duxi, ductum; act. *to lead, to induce, to draw*.
Dulcis, dulcis, dulce; gen. dulcis; *sweet*.
Dum; adv. *whilst*.
Dummodo; conj. *if, provided that*.
Duo; duæ, duo; gen. duorum; *two*.
Duplex, duplex, duplex; gen. duplicis; *double, two-fold*.
Durus, dura, durum; gen. duri; *hard*.
Dux, ducis; masc. *a general, a leader*.
Edax, edax, edax; gen. edacis; *eating, consuming*.
Editus, edita, editum; gen. editi; part. and adj. *descended from*.
Edo, edere, edidi, editum; act. *to utter, to publish*.
Efficio, efficere, effeci, effectum; act. *to effect, to make*.

Effugio, effugere, effūgi, effugitum; act. *to escape*.

Egeo, egere, egui; (no supine,) neut. *to need*.

Ego; pron. *I*. See page 4f.

Egredior, egrēdi, egressus sum; dep. *to go out*.

Egyptus; see *Ægyptus*.

Elephas, elephantis; masc. *an elephant*; and also, elephantus,—*i*.

Elis, Elīdis; fem. *Elis*, a country of Pætoponnesus.

Eloquentia, eloquentiæ; fem. *eloquence*.

Emo, emere, emi, emptum; act. *to buy*.

Emolumentum, emolumentū; neut. *advantage, profit*.

Ensis, ensis; masc. *a sword*.

Eō; adv. *to that pass, to that degree, to that pitch*.

EO, ire, ivi, itum; neut. *to go*.

Epaminondas, Epaminondæ; masc. 1st dec. *Epaminondas*, a celebrated Theban general.

Ephesus, Ephēsi; fem. *Ephesus*, a city of Asia Minor.

Epicūrus, Epicūri; masc. *Epicurus*, a Grecian philosopher.

Epistōla, epistolæ; fem. *a letter, an epistle*.

Equanimitas, equanimitatis; fem. *equanimity*.

Eques, equitis; masc. *a horseman, a knight*.

Equestris, equestris, equestre; gen. equestris; *equestrian*.

Equidem; conj. *truly, verily*.

Equito, equitare, equitavi, equitatum; act. *to ride upon a horse*.

Equus, equi; masc. *a horse*.

Erado, eradere, erāsi, erāsum, act. *to efface*.

Ergo; conj. *therefore*.

Eripio, eripere, eripui, ereptum; act. *to seize*.

Erratum, errāti; neut. *an error, vice*.

Erro, errare, errāvi, erratum; neut. *to err*.

Error, erroris; masc. *an error*.

Erudio, erudire, erudīvi and erudii, eruditum; act. *to teach*.

Esca, escæ; fem. *meat, food*.

Et; conj. *and*. When there are two *ets* following each other in the same sentence, the first *et* should be rendered *both*, and the last one *and*.

Eternus, eterna, eternum; gen. eterni; *eternal*.

Etiam; conj. *also*.

Etsi; conj. *though, although*.

Euphrates, Euphrātis; masc. *the Euphrates*, a river of Mesopotamia.

- Eurōpa, Eurōpæ; fem. *Europe*, one of the four quarters of the world.
 Eurōtas, Eurōtæ, Eurōtæ, Eurōtam or Eurōtan, Eurōta, Eurōtā; 1st
 dec. masc. *the Eurotas*, a river of Laconia in Greece.
 Evādo, evadēre, evāsi, evāsum; neut. and act. *to get out of, to evade*.
 Evenio, evenīre, evēni, eventum; neut. *to come out, to happen*.
 Eventus, eventūs; masc. *an event, an issue*.
 Excito, excitāre, excitāvi, excitātum; act. *to move, to excite*.
 Exēdo, exedēre, exēdi, exēsum; act. *to eat, to consume*.
 Exemplum, exempli; neut. *an example*.
 Exeo, exīre, exīvi, exītum; neut. *to go out*.
 Exercitus, exercitūs; masc. *an army*.
 Eximius, eximia, eximium; gen. eximii; *choice, wonderful, remarkable*.
 Existimo, existimāre, existimāvi, existimātum; act. *to think*.
 Exitium, exitii; neut. *destruction*.
 Expatior, expatiāri, expatiātus sum; dep. *to walk abroad*.
 Expectatio, expectatiōnis; fem. *expectation*.
 Expēdit; imper. *it is profitable*.
 Expeditio, expeditiōnis; fem. *an expedition*.
 Expello, expellēre, expūli, expulsum; act. *to expel*.
 Experior, experīri, expertus sum; dep. *to try*.
 Experts, experts, experts; gen. expertis; *free from, void of*.
 Expertus, experta, expertum; gen. experti; *skilful, experienced in*.
 Explorātor, explorātōris; masc. *a scout, a spy*.
 Extinguo, extinguēre, extinxi, extinctum; act. *to extinguish, to kill*.
 Exuberō, exuberāre, exuberāvi, exuberātum; neut. *to abound*.
 Exul, exūlis; com. *an exile, a banished man or woman*.
 Exuviæ, exuviārum; fem. *spoils*.
 Fabius, Fabii; masc. *Fabius*, a Roman general.
 Fabūla, fabulæ; fem. *a fable*.
 Facies, faciēi; fem. *a face*.
 Facile; adv. *easily*; comp. facilius; super. facillime.
 Facinus, facinōris; neut. *an action, a deed*.
 Facio, facēre, feci, factum; act. *to do, to make*. This verb, like *ago*
 and *habeo*, is construed variously, according to its noun, as, *facēre*
verba, to speak, to hold a discourse.
 Facultas, facultātis; fem. *aptness, means, wealth*.
 Fæx, fæcis; fem. *the dregs, or lees of wine, sediment*.
 Fames, famis; fem. *hunger*.
 Famūlor, famulāri, famulātus sum; dep. *to wait upon, to serve*.

- Fatum**, fati; neut. *fate*.
Faveo, favēre, favi, fautum; neut. *to favour*.
Felix, felix, felix, (see p. 34); *happy*.
Fera, feræ; fem. *a wild beast*.
Ferax, ferax, ferax; gen. ferācis; *fertile*.
Ferē; adv. *almost*.
Ferinus, ferīna, ferīnum; (like bonus,) *of a wild beast, or wild beast's—*
as, pellis ferīna, a wild beast's skin.
Fero, ferre, tuli, latum; irreg. *to bear, to carry; also, to say; as, ferunt,*
they carry it about, that is, they say.
Ferrum, ferri; neut. *iron, a sword*.
Fertilis, fertīlis, fertīle; (like mitis,) *fertile*.
Ficus, ficūs; fem. *a fig*.
Fides, fidēi; fem. *faith, credit*.
Fidēlis, fidēlis, fidēle; gen. fidēlis; *faithful, trusty*.
Fido, fidēre, fidi, and fisis sum; *to trust*.
Filia, filiæ; fem. *a daughter*.
Finio, finire, finīvi, finītum; act. *to finish*.
Finis, finis; masc. *an end, a border, a limit*.
Flamma, flammæ; fem. *a flame*.
Fleo, flēre, flevi, fletum; act. *to weep*.
Florens, florens, florens; gen. florentis; *flourishing*.
Floréo, florēre, florui; (no supine,) neut. *to flourish*.
Flumen, flumīnis; neut. *a river*.
Fluo, fluēre, fluxi, fluxum; neut. *to flow*.
Fluvius, fluvii; masc. *a river*.
Fœdus, fœda, fœdum; gen. fœdi; *filthy, base, vile*.
Fœdus, fœdēris; neut. *a league, a treaty*.
Fœmīna, fœmīnæ; fem. *a woman*.
Fons, fontis; fem. *a fountain*.
Foris; adv. *abroad, without*.
Formōsus, formōsa, formōsum; gen. formōsi; *beautiful*.
Fortis, fortis, forte; gen. fortis; *brave*.
Fortīter, fortīus, fortissimē; adv. *bravely, more bravely, most bravely*.
Fortūna, fortūnæ; fem. *fortune*.
Fossa, fossæ; fem. *a ditch*.
Frango, frangēre, fregi, fractum; act. *to break*.
Frater, fratris; masc. *a brother*.
Fraus, fraudis; fem. *fraud*.

Frequentō, frequentāre, frequentāvi, frequentātum; act. *to frequent, to people a place.*

Frētum, freti; *a strait, a frith.*

Fretus, freta, fretum; gen. *freti;* *trusting to, relying on.*

Frigidus, frigida, frigidum; (like bonus,) *frigid, cold.*

Frons, frondis; fem. *a leaf of a tree.*

Frugalitas, frugalitatis; fem. *frugality.*

Fruges, frugum; fem. plur. *fruit, corn.*

Frumentum, frumenti; neut. *corn.*

Fruor, frui, fructus, or fructus sum; dep. *to enjoy.*

Fugio, fugere, fugi, fugitum; act. *to fly from, to escape.*

Fugo, fugare, fugavi, fugatum; act. *to put to flight.*

Fulgeo, fulgere, fulsi; (no supine,) neut. *to shine.*

Fulvia, Fulviæ; fem. *Fulvia*, a woman of Rome, who made known to Cicero the designs which Cataline and the other conspirators had against his life.

Fundamentum, fundamenti; neut. *a foundation.*

Fundo, fundare, fundavi, fundatum; act. *to found, to establish.*

Fundo, fundere, fudi, fusum; act. *to pour out, to vanquish.*

Fungor, fungi, functus sum; dep. *to discharge an office or duty.*

Funis, funis, masc. and fem. *a rope.*

Furor, furoris; masc. *madness, fury.*

Furtum, furti; neut. *theft.*

Futurus, futura, futurum; gen. *futuri;* (part. of *esse*,) *about to be, the future.*

Gaditanus, Gaditana, Gaditanum; gen. *Gaditani;* *of, or belonging to ancient Gades; the freta Gaditana, are what are now called the Straits of Gibraltar.*

Galea, galeæ; fem. *a helmet.*

Galli, Gallorum; masc. *the Gauls.*

Gallia, Galliæ; fem. *ancient Gaul, now France.*

Gallus, Galli; masc. *a Gaul.*

Gaudeo, gaudere, gavissus sum; neut. *to rejoice.*

Gemma, gemmæ; fem. *a gem. a rich treasure.*

Gens, gentis; fem. *a nation.*

Geographia, geographiæ; fem. *geography.*

Germāni, Germanorum; masc. *the Germans.*

Gero, gerere, gessi, gestum; act. *to carry on.*

Gestio, gestire, gestivi, gestitum; neut. *to rejoice.*

Gigno, gignere, genui, genitum; act. *to beget, to produce.*

Glacies, glaciēi; fem. *ice*.

Gloria, gloriæ; fem. *glory*.

Glōrior, gloriāri, gloriātus sum; dep. *to boast*.

Græcus, græca, græcum; (like bonus,) *Græcian*.

Grammatica, grammaticæ; fem. *grammar*.

Gratia, gratiæ; fem. *favour, sake, cause*.

Gratus, grata, gratum; gen. grati; *grateful, acceptable*.

Gravis, gravis, grave; gen. gravis; *heavy*.

Grecia, Greciæ; fem. *Greece*.

Grotius, Grotii; masc. *Grotius*, a most distinguished German author, who flourished about two hundred years ago.

Gubernaculum, gubernaculi; neut. *the helm of a ship*.

Habeo, habēre, habui, habitum; act. *to have, to esteem, to reckon*. But the translation must depend upon the noun which it governs; as, habēre orationem, *to deliver an oration*.

Hæreo, hære, hæsi, hæsum; neut. *to stick*.

Hannibal, Hannibālis; masc. *Hannibal*, a Carthaginian general.

Hector, Hectōris; masc. *Hector*, a Trojan general.

Hei! inter. *ah!*

Helēna, Helēnæ; fem. *Helen*, a Grecian woman of great beauty whom Paris carried to Troy; and thence arose the Trojan war.

Helōtes, Helōtum; masc. *the Helots*, a people whom the Spartans held in slavery.

Herē; adv. *yesterday*; sometimes spelled *heri*.

Heu! inter. *alas!*

Hic, hæc, hoc; *this*. See page 44.

Hiems, hiemis; fem. *winter*.

Hispania, Hispaniæ; fem. *Spain*, a country in the south of Europe.

Homērus, Homēri; masc. *Homer*, an ancient Greek poet.

Homicidium, homicidii; neut. *murder*.

Homo, hominis; com. *a man or woman*. Homīnes, plur. *men*.

Honestas, honestātis; fem. *honesty*.

Honestus, honesta, honestum; gen. honesti; *noble, honest*.

Honor, honoris; masc. *honour*.

Honōro, honorāre, honorāvi, honorātum; act. *to honour*.

Hora, horæ; fem. *an hour*.

Horatius, Horatii; masc. *Horace*, the great lyric poet of the Romans.

Hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum; dep. *to exhort, to advise*.

Hortus, horti; masc. *a garden*.

Hostis, hostis; masc. *an enemy*.

Hūc; adv. *hither, here.*

Iconium, Iconii; neut. *Iconium*, a town in Asia Minor.

Ictus, ictūs; masc. *a blow.*

Idem, eādem, idem; gen. ejusdem; *the same.*

Igitur; conj. *therefore.*

Ignārus, ignāra, ignārum; gen. ignāti; *ignorant.*

Ignis, ignis; masc. *fire.*

Ignōtus, ignōta, ignōtum; (like bonus,) *unknown.*

Ille, illa, illud; gen. illius; *he, she, it.* See page 43.

Illecēbra, illecēbræ; fem. *an enticement.*

Illustris, illustris, illustre; gen. illustris; *illustrious.*

Illyrius, Illyrii; masc. *an Illyrian.*

Imāgo, imaginis; fem. *an image.*

Imitor, imitari, imitatus sum; dep. *to imitate.*

Immēmor, immēmor, immēmor; gen. immemoris; *unmindful.*

Immineo, imminere, imminui; neut. *to threaten.*

Immortālis, immortalis, immortalē; gen. immortalis; *immortal.*

Immutātus, immutāta, immutatum; gen. immutati; adj. *unchanged.*

Impendo, impendere, impendi, impensum; neut. *to hang over, to threaten.*

Imperātor, imperatoris; masc. *a commander.*

Imperiōsus, imperiōsa, imperiōsum; gen. imperiōsi; *imperious, that can rule or govern.*

Imperium, imperii; neut. *command, government.*

Impēro, imperare, imperavi, imperatum; act. *to command, to reign.*

Impertio, impertire, impertivi, impertitum; act. *to impart.*

Impētus, impētūs; masc. *an attack.*

Impiētas, impietātis; fem. *impiety.*

Impleo, implere, implēvi, implētum; act. *to fill.*

Incedo, incedere, incessi, incesum; neut. *to walk.*

Incertus, incerta, incertum; gen. incerti; *uncertain.*

Incolo, incolere, incolui, incultum; act. *to inhabit.*

Incommōdum, incommōdi; neut. *a loss, an inconvenience.*

Incredibīlis, incredibīlis, incredibīle; (like mitis,) *incredible, not to be believed.*

Indē; adv. *thence, from that place.*

India, Indiæ; fem. *India*, the south eastern part of Asia.

Indigeo, indigere, indigui; (no supine,) neut. *to want.*

Indōles, indōlis; fem. *a disposition.*

Induo, induere, indui, indūtum; act. *to cover, to clothe.*

Industria, industriæ; fem. *industry*.

Inertia, inertię; fem. *sluggishness*.

Infinītus, infinīta, infinītum; gen. infinīti; *infinite*.

Inflammo, inflammāre; inflammāvi, inflammātum; act. *to inflame*.

Ingenium, ingenii; neut. *the mind, the talents, the disposition*.

Ingens, ingens, ingens; gen. ingentis; *great*.

Ingredior, ingrēdi, ingressus sum; dep. *to enter*.

Inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum; gen. inimīci; *hostile, inimical*.

Initium, initii; neut. *a beginning*.

Injuria, injurię; fem. *an injury*.

Inopia, inopię; fem. *want*.

Inops, inops, inops; gen. inōpis; *poor, destitute of*.

Insidię, insidiārum; fem. plur. *snares, an ambush*.

Inspiciens, insipientis; adj. *foolish*.

Insūla, insūlę; fem. *an island*.

Insum, inesse, infui; neut. *to be in*.

Intentus, intenta, intentum; gen. intenti; *intent upon*.

Interdico, interdicere, interdixi, interdictum; act. *to interdict, to prohibit, to forbid*.

Interea; adv. *in the mean time*.

Interficio, interficere, interfēci, interfectum; act. *to slay*.

Interpres, interpretis; com. *an interpreter*.

Interpretor, interpretari, interpretatus sum; dep. *to explain*.

Intersum, interesse, interfui; neut. *to be present*.

Intervenio, intervenire, intervēni, interventum; act. *to intervene, to put an end to*.

Invenio, invenire, invēni, inventum; act. *to invent, to find*.

Invideo, invidere, invidi, invisum; neut. *to envy*.

Invidia, invidię; fem. *envy*.

Invisus, invisa, invisum; gen. invisi; *odious, hated*.

Ipsē, ipsa, ipsum; gen. ipsius; pron. *he, she, it*.

Ira, irę; fem. *anger*.

Irātus, irāta, irātum; (like bonus,) *angry*.

Irretio, irretire, irretivi, irretitum; act. *to entangle*.

Irideo, irridere, irrisi, irrisum; act. *to laugh at, to deride*.

Is, ea, id; *he, she, it*. See page 44.

Isocrātes, Isocrātis; masc. *Isocrates, a Grecian philosopher*.

Iste, ista, istud; gen. istius; pron. *this, that*.

Ita; adv. *so, in that manner*.

Italia, Italię; fem. *Italy, a country in the south of Europe*.

Iter, itinēris; neut. *a journey.*

Itērum; adv. *again.*

Jam; adv. *now.*

Joannes, Joannis; masc. *John.*

Juba, jubæ; fem. *a mane*; juba leōnis; *a lion's mane.*

Jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum; act. *to command.*

Judex, Judicis; com. *a judge.*

Judicium, judicii; neut. *judgment, a trial.*

Judico, judicāre, judicāvi, judicātum; act. *to judge.*

Jugurtha, Jugurthæ; masc. *Jugurtha*, a king of Numidia.

Julius Cæsar, Julii Cæsaris; masc. *Julius Cæsar*, a Roman general.

Jungo, jungēre, junxi, junctum; act. *to join.*

Junius, Junii; masc. *June.*

Juno, Junōnis; fem. *Juno*, the queen of the goddesses.

Jupīter; gen. Jovis; dat. Jovi; acc. Jovem; voc. Jupīter; abl. Jove;
masc. *Jupiter*, the greatest of the heathen deities; sometimes means
the air, as he was the god of the heavens.

Juro, jurāre, jurāvi, jurātum; act. *to swear.*

Jus, juris; neut. *right, law, justice.*

Justitia, justitiæ; fem. *justice.*

Justus, justa, justum; gen. justī; *just.*

Juvēnis, juvēnis; com. *a youth.*

Juvo, juvāre, juvi, jutum; act. *to help, to do good.*

Labium, labii; neut. *a lip.*

Labor, labi, lapsus sum; dep. *to fall.*

Labor, labōris; masc. *labour.*

Lac, lactis; neut. *milk.*

Lacedæmon, Lacedæmōnis; fem. *Lacedæmon*, a city of Greece.

Lacertus, lacerti; masc. *an arm.*

Lacrýma, lacrymæ; fem. *a tear.*

Lana, lanæ; fem. *wool.*

Lanātus, lanāta, lanātum; gen. lanāti; *woolly, bearing wool.*

Largīter; adv. *largely, much.*

Lateo, latēre, latui; neut. *to be concealed.*

Latro, latrōnis; masc. *a robber.*

Latus, latēris; neut. *the side.*

Laudo, laudāre, laudāvi, laudātum; act. *to praise.*

Laus, laudis; fem. *praise.*

Lavinium, Lavinii; neut. *Lavinium*, a town in Italy.

- Lectio**, **lectiōnis**; fem. *a lesson*.
Legātus, **legāti**; masc. *an ambassador*.
Legio, **legiōnis**; fem. *a legion, a band of soldiers*.
Lego, **legēre**, **legi**, **lectum**; aet. *to read*.
Lenis, **lenis**, **lene**; gen. **lenis**; kind, *soft, gentle*.
Leo, **leōnis**; masc. *a lion*.
Lepīdus, **lepīda**, **lepīdum**; gen. **lepīdi**; *witty, smart*.
Lepus, **lepōris**; masc. *a hare*.
Lesbos, **Lesbi**; fem. *Lesbos, an island in the Ægean sea*.
Lethālis, **lethālis**, **lethāle**; gen. **lethālis**; *deadly*.
Lex, **legis**; fem. *a law*.
Liber, **libri**; masc. *a book*.
Libēri, **liberōrum**; masc. pl. *children*.
Libēro, **liberāre**, **liberāvi**, **liberātum**; act. *to liberate, to set free*.
Libīdo, or **lubīdo**, **lubidīnis**; fem. *desire, pleasure, criminal appetite*.
Licet; imper. present tense; *it is lawful*.
Licet; conj. *although*.
Limen, **limīnis**; neut. *a threshold of a door*.
Lingua, **linguæ**; fem. *a language*.
Linquo, **linquēre**, **liqui**, **lictum**; act. *to leave*.
Lis, **litis**; fem. *a strife, a dispute*.
Litēra, **litēræ**; fem. *a letter; in the plural, writings, learning, literature*.
Litus, **litōris**; neut. *the sea shore*.
Loco, **locāre**, **locāvi**, **locātum**; act. *to place, to let or lease*.
Locūples, **locūples**, **locūples**; gen. **locuplētis**; *rich*.
Locus, **loci**; masc. *a place; plural, loci and loca, locōrum*; neut.
Longitūdo, **longitudīnis**; fem. *length*.
Longus, **longa**, **longum**; gen. **longi**; *long*.
Loquor, **loqui**, **locūtus** or **loquūtus** sum; dep. *to speak*.
Lubet; imper. *it pleases*, same as **libet**.
Luceo, **lucēre**, **luxi**; (no supine,) neut. *to shine*.
Ludo, **ludēre**, **lusi**, **lusum**; neut. *to play*.
Luna, **lunæ**, fem. *the moon*.
Lupus, **lupi**; masc. *a wolf*.
Lusitania, **Lusitanīæ**; fem. *Portugal, or rather a part of that country now called Portugal*.
Lux, **lucis**; fem. *light*.
Luxuria, **luxuriæ**; fem. *luxury*.
Macēdo, **Macedōnis**; masc. *a Macedonian*.

Macedonia, Macedoniæ; fem. Macedonia.

Magister, magistri; masc. a master.

Magistratus, magistrātus; masc. magistracy, a magistrate.

Magnitudo, magnitudinis; fem. size, magnitude.

Magnus, magna, magnum; (like bonus,) great. See page 40.

Majestas, majestātis; fem. majesty.

Majores, majōrum; plural, masc. ancestors.

Male; adv. badly, wickedly.

Maledico, maledicere, maledixi, maledictum; act. to revile.

Malefacio, malefacere, malefeci, malefactum; act. to do an ill, to revile, to abuse.

Malum, mali; neut. evil.

Malus, mala, malum; (like bonus,) bad. See page 40.

Mandatum, mandati; neut. a command.

Mane; adv. early in the morning.

Maneo, manere, mansi, mansum; neut. and act. to remain, to wait for.

Manus, manūs; fem. the hand.

Marcus Antonius, Marci Antonii; masc. Mark Antony, a Roman.

Margarita, margaritæ; fem. a pearl.

Mare, maris; neut. the sea.

Marinus, marina, marinum; gen. marini; marine, relating to the sea.

Mater, matris; fem. a mother.

Mausolus, Mausoli; masc. Mausolus, a king of Caria, whose monument called the Mausoleum, was reckoned among the seven wonders of the world.

Maximus, maxima, maximum; gen. maximi; the greatest. See p. 40.

Me; me; acc. and abl. of ego; I. See page 41.

Mecenas, Mecenatis; masc. Mecenas, a Roman knight.

Medius, media, medium; gen. medii; the middle, common.

Meipsum; me myself; compounded of me, me; and ipsum, myself; from ipse: declined like ego, and ipse, separately.

Mel, mellis; neut. honey.

Membrana, membranæ, fem. a membrane.

Memini; defective verb, perfect tense, with the signification of a present tense; I remember; inf. meminisse; imper. memento, mementote.

Memor, memor, memor; gen. memoris; mindful.

Memoro, memorare, memoravi, memoratum; act. to make mention of, to mention.

Menelaus, Menelai; masc. Menelaus, a king of Sparta.

- Mens, mentis;** fem. *the mind*.
Mensis, mensis; masc. *a month*.
Merces, mercēdis; fem. *a reward*.
Meridies, meridiēi; masc. *mid-day*.
Merum, meri; neut. *wine*.
Merx, mercis; fem. *merchandise*.
Messis, messis; fem. *a harvest*.
Metallum, metalli; neut. *a metal*.
Metellus, Metelli; masc. *Metellus*, a Roman consul.
Metus, metūs; masc. *fear*.
Meus, mea, meum; gen. mei; adj. pron. *my, mine*.
Miles, milītis; masc. *a soldier*.
Mille and millia; adj. plural, ind. in the singular; in the plural, *millia, millium, millibus;* *a thousand*.
Milo, Milōnis; masc. *Milo*, a Roman who killed Clodius, and who was defended by Cicero.
Miltiādes, Miltiādis; masc. *Miltiades*, an Athenian general.
Mina, minæ; fem. *a pound*.
Minæ, minarum; fem. plur. *threats*.
Minimus, minīma, minīmum; (super. of parvus,) *the least*. See p. 40.
Minor, mināri, minātus sum; dep. *to threaten*.
Minor, minor, minus; gen. minōris; (comp. of parvus,) *less*. See p. 40.
Mirabilis, mirabilis, mirabile; gen. mirabilis; *wonderful*.
Miraculum, miracūli; neut. *a wonder, a miracle*.
Mirus, mira, mirum; gen. miri; *wonderful*.
Miser, misēra, misērū; gen. misēri; *miserable*.
Miserandus, misēranda, miserandum; gen. miserandi; *to be pitied, lamentable*.
Misereor, miserēri, misertus and miserītus sum; dep. *to pity*.
Miseresco, miserescēre; neut. *to pity*: no perfect nor supine.
Mitis, mitis, mite; gen. mitis; *meek, mild, merciful*.
Mitto, mittēre, misi, missum; act. *to send*.
Modēror, moderāri, moderātus sum; dep. *to govern, to moderate*.
Modestus, modesta, modestum; gen. modesti; *moderate, modest*.
Mœnia, mœnium; neut. *walls*; used only in the plural.
Molestia, molestiæ; fem. *trouble, vexatiousness*.
Molestus, molestā, molestum; gen. molesti; *troublesome*.
Molo, Molōnis; masc. *Molo*, a Rhodian orator.
Moneo, monēre, monui, monītum; act. *to admonish*.
Monitor, monitōris; masc. *an adviser*.

Mons, montis; masc. *a mountain.*

Morbus, morbi; masc. *a disease.*

Morior, mori *and* morīri, mortuus sum; dep. *to die.*

Moror, morāri, morātus sum; dep. *to delay.*

Morōsus, morōsa, morōsum; gen. morōsi; *peevish, cross.*

Mors, mortis; fem. *death.*

Mortālis, mortālis, mortāle; gen. mortālis; *mortal*; when not joined with a noun it means *a mortal*; that is, *a man.*

Moveo, moyēre, movi, motum; act. *to move.*

Mox; adv. *presently.*

Muliēbris, muliēbris, muliēbris; gen. muliēbris; *effeminate.*

Mulier, mulieris; fem. *a woman.*

Multitūdo, multitudinis; fem. *a multitude.*

Multū; adv. *much*; also multō, *by much.*

Multus, multa, multum; gen. multi; *much, many.* See page 40.

Mundus, mundi; masc. *the world.*

Munio, munīre, munii *and* munīvi, munītum; act. *to fortify.*

Munītus, munīta, munītum; gen. munīti; part. *fortified.*

Munus, munēris; neut. *a gift.*

Murus, muri; masc. *a wall.*

Musa, musæ; fem. *a muse.*

Muto, mutāre, mutāvi, mutātum; act. *to change.*

Nam; conj. *for.*

Narratio, narratiōnis; fem. *a narration.*

Narro, narrāre, narrāvi, narrātum; act. *to relate.*

Nascor, nasci, natus sum; dep. *to be born.*

Natio, natiōnis; fem. *a nation.*

Natūra, natūræ; fem. *nature, disposition.*

Natus, nati; masc. *a son.*

Natus, nata, natum; gen. nati; perf. participle from nascor; *descended, born.*

Nauta, nautæ; masc. *a sailor, a mariner.*

Navālis, navālis, navāle; gen. navālis; *naval.*

Navis, navis; fem. *a ship.*

Neapōlis, Neapōlis; fem. *Naples, a city of Italy.*

Ne; adv. *not.*

Nec; conj. *neither, nor.*

Neco, necāre, necāvi, necātum; act. *to kill.*

Neglīgens, neglīgens, neglīgens; gen. negligentis; *careless, negligent.*

Neglīgo, neglīgēre, neglexi, neglectum; act. *to neglect.*

Negotium, negotiī; neut. *a thing, an affair, business.*

Nemo, neminis; com. *no one.*

Neptūnus, Neptūni; masc. *Neptune, the god of the sea.*

Neque; conj. *neither.*

Niger, nigra, nigrum; gen. nigri; *black.*

Nihil; noun, ind. *nothing*; sometimes contracted into *nīl*.

Nihīlum, nihīli; neut. *nothing.*

Nimis; adv. *too much.*

Nisi; conj. *unless.*

No, nāre, nāvi, nātum; neut. *to swim.*

Nobilis, nobilior, nobilissimus; *noble, nobler, noblest.*

Noceo, nocēre, nocui, nocitum; act. *to hurt.*

Nomen, nomīnis; neut. *a name.*

Non; adv. *not.*

Nonus, nona, nonum; gen. noni; *the ninth.*

Nos, nostrum or nostri; *we, of us, &c.* See page 41.

Nosco, noscēre, novi, notum; act. *to know.*

Noster, nostra, nostrum; gen. nostri; *our.*

Novitas, novitatis; fem. *novelty, newness.*

Novus, nova, novum; gen. novi; *new.*

Nox, noctis; fem. *night.*

Nubes, nubis; fem. *a cloud.*

Nudo, nudāre, nudāvi, nudātum; act. *to deprive.*

Nullus, nulla, nullum; gen. nullius; *no one.* See page 33.

Numantia, Numantiæ; fem. *Numantia, a city in Spain.*

Numantīni, Numantinōrum, masc. *the Numantines, a people of ancient Spain.*

Numen, numīnis; neut. *a god, power, authority, divine influence.*

Nummus, nummi; masc. *a piece of money.*

Nunc; adv. *now.*

Nuncio, nunciāre, nunciāvi, nunciātum; act. *to announce, to tell; also written nuntio.*

Nunquam; adv. *never.*

Nuntius, nuntii; masc. *a messenger.*

O! inter. *oh!*

Obedio, obedire, obedivi, obedītum; neut. *to obey.*

Obliviscor, oblivisci, oblītus sum; dep. *to forget.*

Observatio, observatiōnis; fem. *notice, observation.*

Obses, obsidis; masc. and fem. *a hostage.*

Obsum, obesse, obsui; neut. *to be hurtful, to hurt, to injure.*

Obtineo, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentum; act. *to obtain*.

Obviā; adv. *in the way, to meet*.

Occīdo, occidēre, occīdi, occisum; act. *to kill*.

Occīdo, occidēre, occīdi, occāsum; neut. *to set*.

Occulto, occultāre, occultāvi, occultātum; act. *to hide, to keep secret, or conceal*.

Occultus, occulta, occultum; gen. occulti; *hidden, secret*.

Occumbo, occumbēre, occubui, occubitum; neut. *to fall down, to yield*.

Occūpo, occupāre, occupāvi, occupātum; act. *to seize, to occupy*.

Octāvus, octāva, octāvum; gen. octāvi; *the eighth*.

Octoginta; ind. adj. *eighty*.

Oculus, oculi; masc. *an eye*.

Odi; a defective verb, *I hate, or have hated*. It is used only in this tense, the perfect, and those derived from it.

Odōror, odorāri, odorātus sum; dep. *to smell*.

Officio, officēre, offēci, effectum; act. *to hinder, to be hurtful to*.

Officium, officii; neut. *a duty, office*.

Olympius, Olympia, Olympium; (like bonus,) *Olympian*, an epithet of Jupiter.

Omnis, omnis, omne; gen. omnis; *all, every*.

Onēro, onerāre, onerāvi, onerātum; act. *to load*.

Onus, onēris; neut. *a weight, a burden*.

Onustus, onusta, onustum; gen. onusti; *laden or loaded with*.

Opēra, opērae; fem. *toil, labour*.

Opēror, operāri, operātus sum; dep. *to labour*.

Opīmus, opīma, opīum; gen. opīmi; *rich, fat*.

Opinio, opiniōnis; fem. *expectation, opinion*.

Opis, gen. opem, acc. ope, abl. (these three cases only are used in the singular,) fem. *power, assistance*; plur. opes, opum, opibus; *wealth, strength*.

Opportūnus, opportūna, opportūnum; gen. opportūni; *convenient, favourable*.

Opprīmo, opprimēre, oppressi, oppressum; act. *to oppress*.

Oppugno, oppugnāre, oppugnāvi, oppugnātum; act. *to assault, to fight against*.

Optabīlis, optabīlis, optabīle; gen. optabīlis; *desirable*.

Optīmē; adv. *best*; compared thus; *benē, meliūs, optīmē*.

Optīmus; super. *best*. See page 40.

Opus; subst. indecl. *need, occasion*.

- Opus, opëris; neut. *a work.*
 Ora, oræ; fem. *a coast, a shore.*
 Oracŭlum, oracŭli; neut. *an oracle.*
 Oratio, oratiōnis; fem. *an oration.*
 Orātor, oratōris; masc. *an orator.*
 Orbo, orbāre, orbāvi, orbātum; act. *to deprive.*
 Oriens, orientis; masc. *the east, or rising of the sun.*
 Orior, orīri, ortus sum; dep. *to rise.*
 Ornātē; adv. *elegantly.*
 Ornatus, ornatŭs; masc. *dress, an ornament.*
 Oro, orāre, orāvi, orātum; act. *to speak, to ask, to pray.*
 Ortus, ortŭs; masc. *birth, descent.*
 Ostende, ostendēre, ostendi, ostensum and ostentum; act. *to shew, to exhibit.*
 Ostento, ostentāre, ostentiāvi, ostentātum; act. *to show, to display, to boast.*
 Otium, otii; neut. *leisure, rest.*
 Paco, pacāre, pacāvi, pacātum; act. *to appease, to subdue.*
 Padus, Padi; masc. *the river Po.*
 Palleo, pallēre, pallui; (no supine,) neut. *to be pale.*
 Panis, panis; masc. *bread.*
 Pango, pangēre, panxi, pegi and pepīgi, pactum; act. *to strike.*
 Par, par, par; gen. paris; *equal*; pares, used as a noun, *equals.*
 Parco, parcēre, peperci, parsum and parcitum; neut. *to spare.*
 Parens, parentis; com. *a parent.*
 Pareo, parēre, parui, paritum; neut. *to obey.*
 Pario, parēre, pepēri, partum; act. *to produce, to bring forth.*
 Paris, Paridis; masc. *Paris, a celebrated Trojan.*
 Parīter; adv. *equally, in a like degree.*
 Paro, parāre, parāvi, parātum; act. *to prepare, to procure, to acquire.*
 Partio, partīre, partīvi, partitum; act. *to divide.*
 Parvus, parva, parvum; gen. parvi; *small, little.* See page 40.
 Passus, passŭs; masc. *a pace.*
 Pateo, patēre, patui; neut. *to be open, to be manifest.*
 Pater, patris; masc. *a father.*
 Patēra, patēræ; fem. *a goblet.*
 Patiens, patiens, patiens; gen. patientis; *patient, able to endure.*
 Patientia, patientiæ; fem. *patience.*
 Patria, patriæ; fem. *a country.*
 Patrimonium, patrimonii; neut. *an inheritance.*

Patrōnus, patrōni; masc. *a patron, a defender.*

Pauci, paucæ, pauca; gen. paucōrum; used only in the plural, *few.*

Paulūlus, paulūla, paulūlum; gen. paulūli; *a little.*

Pauper, pauper, pauper; gen. paupēris; *poor, destitute; when used without a nom. poor persons, the poor.*

Paupertas, paupertātis; fem. *poverty.*

Pavo, pavōnis; masc. *a peacock.*

Pax, pacis; fem. *peace.*

Pecco, peccāre, peccāvi, peccātum; neut. *to sin, to offend, to transgress.*

Pecunia, pecuniæ; fem. *money.*

Pecus, pecōris; neut. *a flock of sheep, cattle.*

Pellis, pellis; fem. *a skin.*

Pendo, pendēre, pependi, pensum; act. *to weigh, to value.*

Perāgo, peragēre, perēgi, peractum; act. *to perfect, to finish.*

Perāgro, peragrāre, peragrāvi, peragratum; act. *to travel over.*

Percutio, percutēre, percussi, percussum; act. *to strike.*

Perdo, perdēre, perdīdi, perditum; *to lose, to consume, to destroy, part. pass. perditus; lost, wretched, miserable.*

Peregrīnor, peregrināri, peregrinātus sum; dep. *to travel over.*

Pereo, perīre, perii, peritum; neut. *to perish, to die.*

Perfectio, perfectiōnis; fem. *perfection.*

Perfēro, perferre, pertūli, perlātum; *to carry, to bear, to convey.*

Perfugio, perfugēre, perfūgi, perfugitum; neut. *to fly for shelter.*

Pergo, pergēre, perrexī, perrectum; neut. *to go, to proceed.*

Pericūlum, pericūli; neut. *danger.*

Perītus, perīta, perītum; gen. perīti; *skilled, expert.*

Perlucēo, perlucēre, perluxi; (no supine,) neut. *to shine through, to be very bright.*

Perniciōsus, perniciōsa, perniciōsum; gen. perniciōsi; *injurious, hurtful.*

Perpetuus, perpetua, perpetuum; gen. perpetui; *perpetual.*

Persæ, Persārum; *the Persians.*

Perseus, Persei; masc. *Perseus, a son of Philip, king of Macedon.*

Persevērō, perseverāre, perseverāvi, perseverātum; act. *to persevere.*

Persuadeo, persuadēre, persuāsi, persuasum; act. *to persuade.*

Perturbo, perturbāre, perturbāvi, perturbātum; act. *to disturb.*

Pervenio, pervenīre, pervēni, perventum; neut. *to come to.*

Pes, pēdis; fem. *a foot.*

Pestis, pestis; fem. *a pest, pestilence, destruction.*

Peto, petĕre, petĭvi and petii, petĭtum; act. *to desire, to seek, to go to.*

Petrus, Petri; masc. *Peter.*

Pharsalia, Pharsaliæ; fem. *Pharsalia*, a province of Thessaly, famous for a battle between Cæsar and Pompey; the town is *Pharsalus*.

Pharsalicus, Pharsalica, Pharsalicum; of *Pharsalia*, *Pharsalian*; *Pharsalia* was a part of Thessaly in Greece.

Pharus, Phari; fem. *Pharus*, an island in the Mediterranean sea.

Philippus, Philippi; masc. *Philip*, king of Macedon.

Philosophia, philosophiæ; fem. *philosophy.*

Philosophus, philosophi; masc. *a philosopher.*

Phœbus, Phœbi; masc. *Apollo.*

Phœnices, Phœnicum; masc. plur. *the Phœnicians.*

Phryges, Phrygum; masc. *the Phrygians*, a people of Asia Minor.

Piĕtas, pietâtis; fem. *piety.*

Pingo, pingĕre, pinxi, pictum; act. *to paint.*

Piræus, Piræi; masc. *Piræus*, the port of Athens.

Piscor, piscâri, piscatus sum; dep. *to fish*; (the word *pisco* on page 154 should be *piscor*.)

Pius, pia, pium; gen. pii; *pious.*

Placeo, placĕre, placui, placĭtum; neut. *to please.*

Plato, Platōnis; masc. *Plato*, an Athenian philosopher.

Plenus, plena, plenum; gen. pleni; *full.*

Plurĭmus; super. of multum; *most*: plurĭmi; *very many.* See page 40.

Plus, pluris; comp. of multum; *more.* See page 40.

Pœna, pœnæ; fem. *punishment.*

Polliceor, pollicĕri, pollicĭtus sum. dep. *to promise.*

Pompeius, Pompeii; masc. *Pompey*, a great Roman general.

Pomum, pomi; neut. *an apple.*

Peno, ponĕre, posui, posĭtum; act. *to place, to pitch.*

Popŭlus, popŭli; masc. *the people.*

Porrĭgo, porrigĕre, porrexi, porrectum; act. *to reach, to extend.*

Portus, portŭs; masc. *a harbor, port, or haven.*

Posco, poscĕre, poposci; (no supine,) *to ask, to demand.*

Posidonius, Posidonii; masc. *Posidonius*, a Rhodian philosopher.

Possessio, possesiōnis; fem. *possession.*

Possum, posse, potui; neut. *to be able.*

Posterĭtas, posteriâtis; fem. *posterity.*

Postquā; adv. *after that.*

Postridie; adv. *on the next day.*

Postŭlo, postulāre, postulāvi, postulātum; act. *to demand.*

Potentia, potentiæ; fem. *power*.

Potestas, potestātis; fem. *power*.

Potio, potiōnis; fem. *drink, a draught*.

Potior, potiri, potitus sum; dep. *to possess, to enjoy*.

Præceptum, præcepti; neut. *a precept, a command*.

Præcipuè; adv. *especially*.

Præclārus, præclāra, præclārum; gen. præclāri; *distinguished, excellent, famous*.

Præda, prædæ; fem. *prey, booty*.

Præditus, prædita, præditum; gen. præditi; *endued with*.

Prædor, prædari, prædātus sum; dep. *to plunder*.

Prælium, prælii; neut. *a battle*.

Præluceo, prælucēre, præluxi; (no supine,) neut. *to surpass*.

Præmium, præmii; neut. *a reward*.

Præsidium, præsidii; neut. *a guard, a defence*.

Præideo, præsidere, præsedī, præsessum; neut. *to preside over*.

Præstans, præstans, præstans; gen. præstantis; *excellent*.

Præstat, præstābat; impers. *it is better*.

Præsum, præesse, præfui; neut. *to be before or over, to command*.

Prætor, prætōris; masc. *a prætor*; a magistrate of Rome, next in honor to the consul.

Pravus, prava, pravum; gen. pravi; *wicked, depraved*.

Precis; dat. preci; acc. precem; abl. prece; fem. *a prayer*: it has but these four cases in the singular: in the plural—preces, precum, precibus; *prayers, supplications*.

Pretiōsus, pretiōsa, pretiōsum; (like bonus,) *precious, valuable*.

Pretium; neut. *price*.

Pridiè; adv. *the day before*.

Primus, prima, primum; super. *first*; comp. prior; *the former*: no positive.

Princeps, principis; com. properly an adj. meaning, *first, chief*; but often used as a noun, meaning, *a prince, an emperor, a general*.

Principium, principii; neut. *a beginning*.

Priusquā; adv. *before that*.

Privo, privāre, privāvi, privātum; act. *to deprive*.

Probitas, probitātis; fem. *goodness, probity*.

Probo, probāre, probāvi, probātum; act. *to prove, to try*.

Proboscis, proboscīdis; fem. *a proboscis, an elephant's trunk*.

Probus, proba, probum; gen. probi; *good, virtuous*.

Procēdo, procedēre, processi, processum; neut. *to proceed.*

Prodigium, prodigii; neut. *a prodigy.*

Proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum; dep. *to go, to advance.*

Proh! inter. *oh!*

Promitto, promittēre, promīsi, promissum; act. *to promise.*

Promptus, prompta, promptum; gen. prompti; *ready.*

Propē; adv. *near.*

Propōno, proponēre, proposui, propositum; act. *to proclaim, to propose.*

Proprior, proprior, proprius; gen. propriōris; comp. *nearer*; super. *proxīmus*; *nearest*. This adjective has no positive. The comparative and superlative are derived from the adverb, propē, *near*.

Proprius, propria, proprium; gen. proprii; *proper, peculiar, one's own.*

Prospicio, prospicēre, prospexi, prospectum; act. *to view, to provide for.*

Prosum, prodesse, profui, (compounded of *pro* and *sum* and varied like *sum*;) *to do good, to be serviceable to.*

Providus, provida, providum; gen. providi; *foreseeing, wise.*

Provincia, provinciae; fem. *a province.*

Proxīmē; adv. *next, verry near*: comparative, *propiūs*.

Prudens, prudens, prudens; gen. prudentis; *prudent.*

Prudentia, prudentiae; fem. *prudence.*

Ptolemæus, Ptolemæi; masc. *Ptolemy*, one of the kings of Egypt.

Pudor, pudōris; masc. *modesty.*

Puella, puellae; fem. *a girl.*

Puer, puēri; masc. *a boy.*

Puerilis, puerilis, puerile; gen. puerilis; *childish, puerile.*

Pugio, pugionis; masc. *a dagger.*

Pugna, pugnae; fem. *a battle.*

Pugno, pugnāre, pagnāvi, pugnatum; neut. *to fight, to resist.*

Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum; gen. pulchri; *beautiful, good, excellent.*

Punio, punīre, punjvi, punitum; act. *to punish.*

Puto, putāre, putāvi, putatum; act. *to think, to consider.*

Pyrāmis, pyramidis; fem. *a pyramid.*

Pyrenæi, Pyrenæorum; masc. plur. *the Pyrenees mountains*, dividing France from Spain.

Quæro, quærēre, quæsivi, quæsitum; act. *to ask, to seek.*

Qualis, qualis, quale; gen. qualis; *of what kind, what sort.*

Quām; conj. *than.*

Quamōbrem; adv. *wherefore.*

Quamvis; conj. *although, though.*

Quanquam; conj. *although.*

Quantū; adv. *as much as, how much! how!*

Quantus, quanta, quantum; gen. quanti; *how great, how much.*

Quartus, quarta, quartum; gen. quarti; *the fourth.*

Quatuor; indecl. *four.*

Que; conj. *and*: always joined to the end of a word.

Queror, queri, questus sum; dep. *to complain.*

Qui, quæ, quod; *who, which, that.* See page 46.

Quidam, quædam, quoddam, or quiddam; gen. cujusdam; *a certain thing or person.*

Quidem; adv. *truly, indeed.*

Quies, quiētis; fem. *rest, quiet.*

Quis, quæ, quod; *who, which, what?*

Quisque, quæque, quodque or quidque; gen. cujusque; pronoun; *every one.*

Quō; adv. *whither.*

Quondam; adv. *in time past, formerly.*

Quousque; adv. *how long.*

Quum; adv. *when.*

Rapio, rapēre, rapui, raptum; act. *to pull, to carry off.*

Ratio, ratiōis; fem. *reason.*

Rebello, rebellāre, rebellāvi, rebellātum; neut. *to rebel.*

Recipio, recipēre, recēpi, receptum; act. *to receive.*

Recordor, recordāri, recordātus, sum; dep. *to remember.*

Rēctē; adv. *rightly, correctly.*

Rectus, recta, rectum; gen. recti; *right, correct, virtuous.*

Reddo, reddēre, reddīdi, reddītum; act. *to restore, to return.*

Redeo, redīre, redīvi, and redii, redītum; neut. *to return.*

Refēro, referre, retūli, relātum; act. *to carry back, to relate.*

Refūto, refutāre, refutāvi, refutātum; act. *to disprove, to restrain.*

Regīna, regīnæ; fem. *a queen.*

Regio, regiōis, fem. *a region, a tract of country.*

Regno, regnāre, regnāvi, regnātum; neut. *to reign.*

Regnum, regni; neut. *a kingdom.*

Rego, regēre, rexi, rectum; act. *to rule.*

Religio, religiōis; fem. *religion.*

Relinquo, relinquēre, relīqui, relictum; act. *to leave, to forsake.*

Remeo, remeāre, remeāvi, remeātum; neut. *to return.*

Reminiscor, reminisci; (no part.) dep. *to remember.*

Remunéro, remunerāre, remunerāvi, remunerātum; act. *to reward, to recompense.*

Remus, remi; masc. *an oar.*

Repāro, reparāre, reparāvi, reparātum; act. *to renew, to repair.*

Reperio, reperire, repēri, repertum; act. *to find.*

Repēto, repetēre, repetīvi or repetii, repetitum; act. *to ask or demand back or again.*

Repleo, replēre, replēvi, replētum; act. *to fill.*

Res, rei; fem. *an affair, a thing;* and sometimes, *property, wealth.*

Responsum, responsi; neut. *an answer.*

Respublica, reipublicæ; fem. *a republic.*

Rex, regis; masc. *a king.*

Rhenus, Rheni; masc. *the river Rhine.*

Rhetor, rhetōris; masc. *a rhetorician, one who teaches rhetoric.*

Rhodānus, Rhodāni; masc. *the Rhone, a river of France.*

Rhodus, Rhodi; fem. *Rhodes, an island in the Mediterranean.*

Rideo, ridēre, risi, risum; neut. *to laugh.*

Ridicūlus, ridicūla; ridicūlum; gen. *ridicūli; ridiculous, worthy to be laughed at.*

Rivus, rivi; masc. *a brook, a river.*

Rogo, rogāre, rogāvi, rogātum; act. *to ask.*

Roma, Romæ; fem. *Rome, a city of Italy, and once the mistress of the world.*

Romāni, Romanōrum; plur. masc. *the Romans.*

Romānus, Romāna, Romānum; (like bonus,) *a Roman.*

Romūlus, Romūli; masc. *Romulus, the founder of Rome.*

Rotundus, rotunda, rotundum; gen. *rotundi; round.*

Ruo, ruere, rui, ruītum; neut. *to rush.*

Rus, ruris; neut. *the country: in the plural, rura, farms, fields.*

Sæpè; adv. *often.*

Salus, salūtis; fem. *health.*

Salvus, salva, salvum; gen. *salvi; safe.*

Sanguinolentus, sanguinolenta, sanguinolentum; gen. *sanguinolenti; bloody.*

Sanguis, sanguinis; fem. *blood.*

Sano, sanāre, sanāvi, sanātum; act. *to heal or cure.*

Sanus, sana, sanum; gen. *sani; sound, whole.*

Sapiens, sapiens, sapiens; gen. *sapientis; wise.*

Sapientia, sapientiæ; fem. *wisdom.*

Sapio, sapere, sapīvi or sapui; neut. and act. *to know, to be wise.*

Sappho, Sapphūs and Sapphōnis; fem. *Sappho*, a celebrated Greek poetess.

Sardinia, Sardiniae; fem. *Sardinia*, an island in the Mediterranean.

Sardis, Sardis; fem. *Sardis*, a city of Lydia in Asia Minor.

Satāgo, satagēre, satēgi; (no supine,) neut. *to be busy, to have enough to do.*

Satis; adv. *enough, sufficient.*

Satisfacio, satisfacere, satisfēci, satisfactum; act. *to satisfy, to perform.*

Saturnus, Saturni; masc. *Saturn*, one of the heathen deities.

Satus, sata, satum; gen. sati; part. *descended from.*

Satus, satūs; masc. *a sowing, planting.*

Scelerātus, scelerāta, scelerātum; gen. scelerāti; *wicked.*

Scelestus, scelesta, scelestum; gen. scelesti; *wicked.*

Scelus, scelēris; neut. *a crime, wickedness.*

Schola, scholæ; fem. *a school.*

Scio, scīre, scivi, scitum; act. *to know.*

Scipio, Scipiōnis; *Scipio*, a Roman general.

Scitor, scitāri, scitātus sum; dep. *to ask, to inquire.*

Scopūlus, scopūli; masc. *a rack.*

Scribo, scribēre, scripsi, scriptum; act. *to write.*

Scythā, Scythæ; masc. *the Scythians*, a people in the north of Asia.

Secundum; prep. *after, as to, according to.*

Secus; prep. *by.*

Sed; conj. *but.*

Sedes, sedis; fem. *a seat, a dwelling, a habitation.*

Sejungo, sejungere, sejunxi, sejunctum; act. *to separate.*

Seligo, seligere, selēgi, selectum; act. *to select, to choose.*

Semen, seminis; neut. *seed.*

Semper; adv. *always.*

Senātus, senātūs; masc. *the senate.*

Senātūsconsultum, senātūsconsulti; neut. *a decree of the senate.*

Senectus, senectūtis; fem. *old age.*

Senex, senīcis and senis; *old*; comp. senior; *older*: no super.

Sensus, sensūs; masc. *sense*, the faculty of perceiving external objects.

Sententia, sententiæ; fem. *an opinion, a sentence.*

Septingentesīmus, septingentesīma, septingentesīmum; *the seven hundredth.*

Sepulchrum, sepulchri; neut. *a sepulchre.*

Sequor, sequi, secūtus sum; dep. *to follow.*

Serius, seria, serium; gen. serii; *serious, grave, important.*

Sermo, sermōnis; fem. *a speech, conversation.*

Sero, serēre, sevi, satum; act. *to sow.*

Serus, sera, serum; gen. seri; *late.*

Servio, servīre, servīvi, servīlum; neut. *to serve, to obey.*

Servitium, servitii; neut. *servitude, slavery.*

Servus, servi; masc. *a servant.*

Sex; ind. *six.*

Si; conj. *if.*

Sicilia, Siciliæ; fem. *Sicily, an island in the Mediterranean.*

Silentium, silentii; neut. *silence.*

Simia, simiæ; fem. *an ape.*

Similis, similis, simile; gen. similis; *like, similar.*

Sinceritas, sinceritatis; fem. *sincerity, candour.*

Sisto, sistere, steti, statum; neut. *to stop, to stand still.*

Sitis, sitis; fem. *thirst.*

Sobrīnus, sobrīni; masc. *a cousin.*

Societas, societatis; fem. *society, an alliance.*

Socrātes, Socrātis; masc. *Socrates, a celebrated Grecian philosopher.*

Sodālis, sodālis; com. *a companion.*

Sol, solis; masc. *the sun.*

Solāmen, solaminis; neut. *comfort.*

Solatum, solatii; neut. *solace, comfort.*

Soleo, solere, solitus sum; neut. pass. *to be accustomed.*

Solitudo, solitudinis; fem. *solitude.*

Solon, Solōnis; masc. *Solon, one of the seven wise men of Greece.*

Solum, soli; neut. *the soil.*

Solum; adv. *only, alone.*

Solus, sola, solum; gen. solius; *alone, only.*

Solvo, solvere, solvi, solūtum; act. *to loose, to free, to pay.*

Somnus, somni; masc. *sleep.*

Sors, sortis; fem. *lot.*

Sparta, Spartæ; *Sparta, one of the most powerful of the Grecian states.*

Spartāni, Spartanōrum; masc. plur. *the Spartans, a people of Greece.*

Specto, spectare, spectavi, spectātum; act. *to behold, to see, to perceive.*

Specus, specūs; masc. *a cave.*

Spes, spei; fem. *hope.*

Spiritus, spiritūs; masc. *the wind, breath.*

Spiro, spirāre, spirāvi, spirātum; act. *to blow, to breathe.*

Splendo, splendēre, splendui; neut. (no supine,) *to shine.*

Spolio, spoliāre, spoliāvi, spoliātum; act. *to spoil, to plunder, to deprive.*

Statua, statuæ; fem. *a statue.*

Statuo, statuēre, statui, statūtum; act. *to resolve.*

Stella, stellæ; fem. *a star.*

Stirps, stirpis; com. *the root of a tree, the race or lineage of a family.*

Sto, stāre, steti, statum; neut. *to stand.*

Studeo, studēre, studui; (no supine,) neut. *to study, to favour.*

Studiōsus, studiōsa, studiōsum; gen. studiōsi; *studious, desirous.*

Studium, studii; neut. *study, concern, employment.*

Stultus, stulta, stultum; gen. stulti; *foolish.*

Suadeo, suadēre, suasi, suasum; act. *to persuade.*

Suavis, suavis, suave; (like mitis,) *sweet, pleasant.*

Subdūco, subducēre, subduxi, subductum; act. *to take away, to withdraw.*

Subitō; adv. *suddenly.*

Subitus, subita, subitum; gen. subīti; *sudden.*

Succenseo, succensēre, succensui; (no supine,) neut. *to be angry.*

Succurro, succurrēre, succurri, succursum; act. *to help.*

Sui; *of himself, of herself, of itself.* See page 42.

Sulla, Sullæ; *Sylla, a Roman general.*

Sum, esse, fui; neut. *to be.*

Summus, summa, summum; gen. summi; super. *highest: positive, superus; high: comp. superior; higher.*

Superior, superior, superius; gen. superiōris; comp. *higher.*

Supersedeo, supersedēre, supersēdi, supersessum; neut. *to forbear.*

Supersum, superesse, superfui; neut. *to abound, to remain.*

Supērus, supēra, supērum; gen. supēri; *high.*

Supervenio, supervenire, supervēni, superventum; neut. *to come upon.*

Surdus, surda, surdum; gen. surdi; *deaf.*

Surgo, surgēre, surrexi, surrectum; neut. *to arise.*

Suus, sua, suum; gen. sui; pro. *his, hers, its.*

Syracusæ, Syracusarum; fem. plur. *Syracuse, the capital of Sicily.*

Syria, Syriæ; fem. *Syria, a country of Asia.*

Taceo, tacēre, tacui, tacitum; neut. *to keep silence.*

Tacitus, tacita, tacitum; gen. tacīti; part. and adj. *silent.*

Talentum, talenti; neut. *a talent, a coin worth one thousand dollars.*

Tām; conj. *as, such.*

Tandem; adv. *at length, at last.*

Tango, tangere, tetigi, tactum; act. *to touch.*

Tantō; adv. *so much, by so much*; properly the ablative of tantus.

Tantus, tanta, tantum; gen. tanti; *so great, so much.*

Taurus, tauri; masc. *a bull.*

Tego, tegere, texi, tectum; act. *to cover.*

Tegumentum, tegumenti; neut. *a covering.*

Temeritas, temeritatis; fem. *rashness.*

Templum, templi; neut. *a temple.*

Tempus, temporis; neut. *time.*

Tendo, tendere, tetendi and tendi, tensum and tentum; act. *to extend, to stretch, to direct one's course, to march, to go.*

Tenēbræ, tenebrarum; fem. plur. *darkness.*

Teneo, tenere, tenui, tentum; act. *to hold fast.*

Tenuis, tenuis, tenue; gen. tenuis; *slender, thin.*

Tergum, tergi; neut. *the back.*

Terra, terræ; fem. *the earth.*

Terribilis, terribilis, terribile; gen. terribilis; *terrible.*

Terror, terrōris; masc. *fear, terror.*

Testimonium, testimonii; neut. *a testimony, a witness.*

Testūdo, testudinis, fem. *a tortoise.* This name was also applied to a warlike wooden machine, covered with hides, which resembled the back of a *tortoise*, and under the cover of which the enemy approached the walls of a city in order to beat them down.

Thebæ, Thebārum; *Thebes*, a city of Greece.

Thesaurus, thesauri; masc. *a treasure.*

Thessalia, Thessaliæ; fem. *Thessaly*, a country of Greece.

Thetis, Thetidis and Thetidos; fem. *Thetis*, one of the heathen sea-goddesses.

Thrax, Thracis; masc. *a Thracian.*

Tibēris, Tibēris; masc. *Tiber*, a river in Italy.

Tiberius, Tiberii; masc. *Tiberius*, a Roman emperor.

Timeo, timēre, timui; neut. and act. *to fear.*

Timīdus, timīda, timīdum; gen. timīdi; *timid.*

Timor, timōris; masc. *fear.*

Tolēro, tolerāre, tolerāvi, tolerātum; act. *to bear.*

Tonitru; neut. ind. *thunder.*

Totus, tota, totum; gen. totius; *the whole.* See page 33.

Tragœdia, tragœdiæ; fem. *tragedy.*

Transeo, transire, transivi, transiitum; act. *to go, to pass.*

Transporto, transportare, transportavi, transportatum; act. *to transport.*

Tribuo, tribuere, tribui, tributum; act. *to give.*

Tridens, tridentis; masc. *a trident*, an instrument with three prongs, the sceptre of the sea-gods.

Triumphus, triumphi; masc. *a triumph.*

Troja, Trojæ; fem. *Troy*, a city in Asia, near the Ægean sea, famous for having been besieged ten years by the Greeks.

Trojanus, Trojana, Trojanum; (like bonus,) *a Trojan*, or inhabitant of Troy.

Tu, tui; *you.* See page 42.

Tui; pron. gen. *of you.* See page 42.

Tumulus, tumuli; masc. *a little hill.* Hence it means *a grave*, as after burial the dirt was thrown up over the body in the shape of a hill.

Tunc; adv. *then, at that time.*

Turbo, turbare, turbavi, turbatum; act. *to disturb, to disorder, to throw into confusion.*

Turma, turmæ; fem. *a troop.*

Turris, turris; fem. *a tower.*

Tutor, tutari, tutatus sum; dep. *to defend.*

Tutus, tuta, tutum; gen. tuti; *safe.*

Tuus, tua, tuum; gen. tui; pron. *thy.*

Ubertas, ubertatis; fem. *richness.*

Ubi; adv. *where.*

Ubique; adv. *every where.*

Ulcisor, ulcisci, ultus sum; dep. *to avenge.*

Ullus, ulla, ullum; gen. ullius; *any, any one.*

Ultimus, ultima, ultimum; *farthest*; comparative, ulterior; *farther.*

Ultra; prep. *beyond.*

Ultro; adv. *willingly, of his own accord.*

Undecentum; adj. ind. *ninety-nine.* Compounded of unus, de, and centum; *one from a hundred.*

Unus, una, unum; gen. unius; *one, some one.*

Urbs, urbis; fem. *a city.*

Uro, urere, ussi, ustum; act. *to burn.*

Ursus, ursi; masc. *a bear.*

Urtica, artice; fem. *a thorn, a nettle.*

Usus, usus; masc. *use, experience*; also, *necessity, need.*

Ut; conj. *that, as*: when an adv. *how!*

Uterque, utrâque, utrumque; gen. utriusque; *both, each.*

Utica, Uticæ; fem. *Utica*, a city of Africa.

Utilis, utilis, utile; gen. utilis; *useful.*

Utinam; adv. of wishing; *O that! would!*

Utor, uti, usus sum; dep. *to use, to have the benefit of.*

Uva, uvæ; fem. *a grape.*

Uxor, uxoris; fem. *a wife.*

Vacuum, vacua, vacuum; gen. vacui; *void of, free from.*

Væ! interj. *alas!*

Valeo, valere, valui, valitum; neut. *to be well.*

Vanitas, vanitatis; fem. *vanity.*

Varietas, varietatis; fem. *a variety.*

Varius, varia, varium; gen. varii; *various.*

Vasto, vastare, vastavi, vastatum; act. *to waste, to destroy.*

Vecordia, vecordiae; fem. *madness.*

Vehementer; adv. *vehemently, exceedingly.*

Velox, velox, velox; gen. velocis; *swift.*

Velut; adv. *even as.*

Venator, venatoris; masc. *a hunter.*

Vendo, vendere, vendidi, venditum; act. *to sell.*

Veneo, venire, venii; (no supine,) neut. *to be sold.*

Venia, veniæ; fem. *pardon.*

Venio, venire, veni, ventum; neut. *to come.*

Ventus, venti; masc. *the wind.*

Verber, verberis; neut. *a lash, a stroke, a stripe.*

Verbum, verbi; neut. *a word.*

Verè; adv. *truly.*

Vergo, vergere; (no perfect nor supine,) neut. *to incline, to bend to.*

Vero; conj. *truly, indeed.*

Verres, Verris; masc. *Verres*, a Roman prætor in Sicily, whom Cicero accused of peculation.

Versus; prep. *towards.*

Verto, vertere, verti, versum; act. *to turn.*

Verus, vera, verum; gen. veri; *true.*

Vescor, vesci; no perfect or participle; dep. *to feed.*

Vester, vestra, vestrum; gen. vestri; *your.*

Vestio, vestire, vesti, vestitum; act. *to clothe.*

Vestis, vestis; fem. *a garment.*

Vetus, vetus, vetus; gen. vetēris; *ancient*.

Via, viæ; fem. *a way*.

Vicīnus, vicīni; masc. *a neighbour*.

Video, vidēre, vidi, visum; act. *to see*.

Vigīlo, vigilāre, vigilāvi, vigilātum; act. *to watch*.

Viginti; adj. ind. *twenty*.

Villa, villæ; fem. *a villa or cottage*.

Vincio, vincīre, vinxi, vinctum; act. *to bind*.

Vinco, vincēre, vici, victum; act. *to conquer*.

Vincūlum, vincūli; neut. *a chain*.

Violo, violāre, violāvi, violātum; act. *to force, to violate*.

Vir, viri; masc. *a man*.

Virgilius, Virgili; *Virgil*, the greatest of the Latin poets.

Virīdis, virīdis, virīde; gen. virīdis; *green*.

Virtus, virtūtis; fem. *virtue, valour*.

Vis; gen. vis; acc. vim; voc. vis; abl. vi; fem. *strength, power*. In the singular it has but these five cases; in the plural it is regular; vires, virium, viribus, &c.

Visus, visūs; masc. *slight*.

Vita, vitæ; fem. *life*.

Vitiōsus, vitiōsa, vitiōsum; (like bonus,) *bad, vicious*.

Vitis, vitis; fem. *a vine*.

Vitium, vitii; neut. *vice, a crime*.

Vito, vitāre, vitāvi, vitātum; act. *to avoid, to shun*.

Vivo, vivēre, vixi, victum; neut. *to live, to have life*.

Voco, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātum; act. *to call, to summon*.

Volo, volāre, volāvi, volātum; neut. *to fly*.

Volo, velle, volui; (no supine,) irreg. *to wish, to be willing*. The participle, volens, is often used adverbially, *willingly*.

Ind. pres. {	Sing. volo,	<i>I wish;</i>	Plur. volūmus,	<i>we wish,</i>
	vis,	<i>thou wishest;</i>	vultis,	<i>you wish;</i>
	vult,	<i>he wishes;</i>	volunt,	<i>they wish.</i>

Voluntas, voluntātis; fem. *the will, the pleasure*.

Voluptas, voluptātis; fem. *pleasure*.

Vox, vocis; fem. *a voice*.

Vulnēro, vulnerāre, vulnerāvi, vulnerātum; act. *to wound*.

Vulnus, vulnēris; neut. *a wound*.

Vultus, vultūs; masc. *the countenance*.

Xantippe, Xantippes; fem. 1st declension; *Xantippe*, the wife of Socrates.

